EM77F900

USB HUB+BB Controller

Product Specification

DOC. VERSION 1.0

ELAN MICROELECTRONICS CORP. July 2007



Trademark Acknowledgments: IBM is a registered trademark and PS/2 is a trademark of IBM. Windows is a trademark of Microsoft Corporation. ELAN and ELAN logo *multical are trademarks of ELAN Microelectronics Corporation*.

Copyright © 2007 by ELAN Microelectronics Corporation **All Rights Reserved**

Printed in Taiwan

The contents of this specification are subject to change without further notice. ELAN Microelectronics assumes no responsibility concerning the accuracy, adequacy, or completeness of this specification. ELAN Microelectronics makes no commitment to update, or to keep current the information and material contained in this specification. Such information and material may change to conform to each confirmed order.

In no event shall ELAN Microelectronics be made responsible for any claims attributed to errors, omissions, or other inaccuracies in the information or material contained in this specification. ELAN Microelectronics shall not be liable for direct, indirect, special incidental, or consequential damages arising from the use of such information or material.

The software (if any) described in this specification is furnished under a license or nondisclosure agreement, and may be used or copied only in accordance with the terms of such agreement.

ELAN Microelectronics products are not intended for use in life support appliances, devices, or systems. Use of ELAN Microelectronics product in such applications is not supported and is prohibited. NO PART OF THIS SPECIFICATION MAY BE REPRODUCED OR TRANSMITTED IN ANY FORM OR BY ANY MEANS WITHOUT THE EXPRESSED WRITTEN PERMISSION OF ELAN MICROELECTRONICS.



ELAN MICROELECTRONICS CORPORATION

Headquarters:

No. 12, Innovation Road 1 Hsinchu Science Park Hsinchu, Taiwan 30077 Tel: +886 3 563-9977 Fax: +886 3 563-9966 http://www.emc.com.tw

Hong Kong:

Elan (HK) Microelectronics Corporation, Ltd. Flat A, 19F., World Tech Centre 95 How Ming Street, Kwun Tong Kowloon, HONG KONG Tel: +852 2723-3376 Fax: +852 2723-7780 elanhk@emc.com.hk

Shenzhen: **Elan Microelectronics**

Shenzhen, Ltd.

3F, SSMEC Bldg., Gaoxin S. Ave. I Shenzhen Hi-tech Industrial Park (South Area), Shenzhen CHINA 518057 Tel: +86 755 2601-0565 Fax: +86 755 2601-0500

USA:

Elan Information Technology Group (USA)

1821 Saratoga Ave., Suite 250 Saratoga, CA 95070 USA Tel: +1 408 366-8225 Fax: +1 408 366-8220

Shanghai:

Elan Microelectronics Shanghai, Ltd.

#23, Zone 115, Lane 572, Bibo Rd. Zhangjiang Hi-Tech Park Shanghai, CHINA 201203 Tel: +86 21 5080-3866 Fax: +86 21 5080-4600



Contents

| 1 | Gen | eral De | scription | 1 |
|---|------|----------------|--|----|
| 2 | Feat | ures | | 1 |
| | 2.1 | Core | | 1 |
| | 2.2 | Oscilla | tors/System Clocks | 2 |
| | 2.3 | Input a | Ind Output (I/O) Pins | 2 |
| | 2.4 | Timers | and Counters | 2 |
| | 2.5 | | pt Sources and Features | |
| | 2.6 | | and | |
| | 2.7 | | sal Serial Bus HUB (USB HUB) | |
| | 2.8 | | Peripheral Interface (SPI) | |
| | 2.0 | | Width Modulation (PWM) | |
| | - | | | |
| | 2.10 | | g-to-Digital Converter (ADC) | |
| • | 2.11 | | n Voltage Regulator | |
| 3 | | • | nent | |
| 4 | | • | tion | |
| 5 | | • | am | |
| 6 | | • | | |
| | 6.1 | • | m Memory | |
| _ | 6.2 | | Register | |
| 7 | | | escription | |
| | 7.1 | • | I Purpose Registers | |
| | | 7.1.1 | Accumulator – ACC | |
| | | 7.1.2 | Indirect Addressing Contents – IAC0 and IAC1 | |
| | | 7.1.3 7.1.4 | High byte Program Counter HPC and Low byte Program Counter LPC Status Register – SR | |
| | | 7.1.4 | RAM Bank Selector – RAMBS0 and RAMBS1 | |
| | | 7.1.6 | ROM Page Selector – ROMPS | |
| | | 7.1.7 | Indirect Addressing Pointers – IAP0 and IAP1 | |
| | | 7.1.8 | Indirect Address Pointer Direction Control Register – IAPDR | |
| | | 7.1.9 | Pointer of Table Look-up – LTBL (0x0B), and HTBL | |
| | | 7.1.10 | Stack Pointer – STKPTR | 35 |
| | | 7.1.11 | Repeat Counter – RPTC | 35 |
| | | | Prescaler Counter – PRC | |
| | | | Real Time Clock Counter – RTCC | |
| | | | Interrupt Flag Register – INTF | |
| | | | Key Wake-up Flag Register – KWUAIF and KWUBIF | |
| | | | I/O Port Registers – PTA ~ PTF | |
| | | | 16-bit Free Run Counter (FRC) – LFRC, HFRC and LFRCB | |
| | | 1.1.10 | Serial Peripheral Interface Read Register – SPIRB | 31 |



| | | 7.1.19 | Serial Peripheral Interface Write Register – SPIWB | . 37 |
|---|------|---------|--|------|
| | | 7.1.20 | Converting Value of ADC – ADDATAH and ADDATAL | . 37 |
| | | 7.1.21 | PWM Duty – DT0L/DT0H and DT1L/DT1H | . 37 |
| | | 7.1.22 | PWM Period – PRD0L/PRD0H and PRD1L/PRD1H | . 37 |
| | | 7.1.23 | PWM Duty Latch – DL0L/DL0H and DL1L/DL1H | . 37 |
| | | 7.1.24 | BB Address Register – RFAAR | . 37 |
| | | 7.1.25 | BB Data Buffer Register – RFDB | . 37 |
| | | 7.1.26 | BB Data Read/Write Control Register – RFACR | . 38 |
| | | 7.1.27 | BB Interrupt Flag Register – RFINTF | . 38 |
| | 7.2 | Dual P | ort Register (0x40 ~ 0x7F) | . 38 |
| | 7.3 | Systen | n Status, Control and Configuration Registers | . 38 |
| | | 7.3.1 | Peripherals Enable Control – PRIE | . 38 |
| | | 7.3.2 | Interrupts Enable Control – INTE | . 39 |
| | | 7.3.3 | Key Wake-up Enable Control – KWUAIE and KWUBIE | . 39 |
| | | 7.3.4 | External Interrupts Edge Control – EINTED | . 40 |
| | | 7.3.5 | Serial Peripheral Serial (SPI) Enable Control Register – SPIC | . 40 |
| | | 7.3.6 | I/O Control Registers – IOCA~IOCF | . 41 |
| | | 7.3.7 | Pull-up Resistance Control Registers for Ports A~F – PUCA~PUCF | . 41 |
| | | 7.3.8 | Open Drain Control Registers of Port B – ODCB | . 41 |
| | | 7.3.9 | Timer Clock Counter Controller – TCCC | . 41 |
| | | 7.3.10 | Free Run Counter Controller – FRCC | . 42 |
| | | 7.3.11 | Watchdog Timer Controller – WDTC | . 42 |
| | | 7.3.12 | ADC analog Input Pin Select – ADCAIS | . 43 |
| | | 7.3.13 | ADC Configuration Register – ADCCR | . 43 |
| | | | PWM Control Register – PWMCR | |
| | | 7.3.15 | BB Interrupt Control Register – RFINTE | . 44 |
| | 7.4 | USB S | tatus, Control and Configuration Registers | . 44 |
| | 7.5 | Code (| Option (ROM-0x3FFF) | .44 |
| 8 | Base | Band | (BB) | . 45 |
| | 8.1 | BB: Sta | andard Interface to the RFW102 Series | . 45 |
| | | 8.1.1 | Features | 45 |
| | | 8.1.2 | Description | 46 |
| | | 8.1.3 | I/O and Package Description | . 47 |
| | | 8.1.4 | BB Architecture | |
| | 8.2 | BB De | scription | .49 |
| | | 8.2.1 | Reset | . 49 |
| | | 8.2.2 | Power Saving Modes | . 49 |
| | | | 8.2.2.1 Power-Down Mode | . 49 |
| | | | 8.2.2.2 Idle Mode | . 49 |
| | | 8.2.3 | Preamble Correlation | . 50 |
| | | 8.2.4 | Refresh Bit | . 50 |
| | | 8.2.5 | Bit Structure | . 51 |
| | | 8.2.6 | CRC | . 52 |



| | | 8.2.7 | RX FIFO | . 53 |
|---|------|---------|--|------|
| | | 8.2.8 | TX FIFO | . 54 |
| | | 8.2.9 | Interrupt Driver | . 54 |
| | | 8.2.10 | Packet Size | . 55 |
| | | 8.2.11 | NET_ID and NODE_ID Filters | . 56 |
| | | 8.2.12 | Carrier-sense | . 56 |
| | | | 8.2.12.1 RFWaves Carrier-Sense Algorithm | . 57 |
| | | | Receiver Reference Capacitor Discharge | |
| | | | Changing BB Configuration | |
| | | 8.2.15 | Input Synchronizer | . 59 |
| | 8.3 | Regist | er Description | 59 |
| | | 8.3.1 | Bit Length Register (BLR) | . 59 |
| | | 8.3.2 | Preamble Low Register (PRE-L) | . 59 |
| | | 8.3.3 | Preamble High Register (PRE-H) | . 59 |
| | | 8.3.4 | Packet Parameter Register (PPR) | . 60 |
| | | 8.3.5 | System Control Register 1 (SCR1) | |
| | | 8.3.6 | System Control Register 2 (SCR2) | . 61 |
| | | 8.3.7 | System Control Register 3 (SCR3) | |
| | | 8.3.8 | System Control Register 4 (SCR4) | |
| | | 8.3.9 | Transmit FIFO Status Register (TFSR) | |
| | | | Receive FIFO Status Register (RFSR) | |
| | | | Location Control Register (LCR) | |
| | | | Node Identity Register (BIR) | |
| | | | Net Identity Register (NIR) | |
| | | | System Status Register (SSR) | |
| | | | Packet Size Register (PSR) | |
| | | | Carrier Sense Register (CSR) | |
| | 8.4 | Interru | pt Registers | 69 |
| | | 8.4.1 | Interrupt Enable Register (IER) | |
| | | 8.4.2 | Interrupt Identification Register (IIR) | . 70 |
| | 8.5 | List of | BB Register Mapping | 71 |
| | 8.6 | MCU E | B Control Registers | 71 |
| | | 8.6.1 | Control Registers List | . 71 |
| | | 8.6.2 | BB Control Example | . 72 |
| 9 | Univ | ersal S | erial Bus Hub (USB Hub) | 74 |
| | 9.1 | Instruc | tion | 74 |
| | 9.2 | Block [| Diagram | 74 |
| | 9.3 | | mbedded Function FIFO Allocation | |
| | 9.4 | | scription | |
| | 9.5 | | Diagram of MCU Interface | |
| | 9.6 | - | lub and Function Register Summary | |
| | 9.0 | | USB General Control Register – GCNTR | |
| | | 9.6.1 | | . /ð |



| | 9.6.2 | Endpoint X Control Register – EP1/2/3CNTR | . 80 |
|-------|----------|---|------|
| | 9.6.3 | Endpoint Interrupt Event Status Register – EPINTR | . 80 |
| | 9.6.4 | Endpoint Interrupt Event Enable Control Register – EPINTE | . 82 |
| | 9.6.5 | State Interrupt Event Flag Register – STAINTR | . 82 |
| | 9.6.6 | State interrupt event Enable Control Register – STAINTE | . 83 |
| | 9.6.7 | Function Address Register – FAR | . 83 |
| | 9.6.8 | Endpoint 0 RX Token Register – EP0RXTR | |
| | 9.6.9 | Endpoint 0 RX Command/Status Register – EP0RXCSR | . 84 |
| | 9.6.10 | Endpoint 0 TX Command/Status Register – EP0TXCSR | . 85 |
| | 9.6.11 | Endpoint X Command/Status Register – EP1/2/3CSR | . 86 |
| | 9.6.12 | Endpoint 0 RX Count Register – EP0RXCTR | . 87 |
| | 9.6.13 | Endpoint 0 TX Count Register – EP0TXCTR | . 88 |
| | 9.6.14 | Endpoint X Count Register – EP1/2/3CTR | . 88 |
| | 9.6.15 | Endpoint 0 RX Data Register – EP0RXDAR | . 88 |
| | 9.6.16 | Endpoint 0 TX Data Register – EP0TXDAR | . 88 |
| | 9.6.17 | Endpoint X Data Register – EP1/2/3DAR | . 89 |
| | 9.6.18 | Hub Global State Register – HGSR | . 89 |
| | 9.6.19 | Hub Interrupt Event Register – HINTR | . 90 |
| | | Hub Interrupt Event Enable Control Register – HINTE | |
| | 9.6.21 | Hub Address Register – HAR | . 91 |
| | 9.6.22 | HUB Endpoint 0 RX Token Register – HEP0RXTR | . 91 |
| | 9.6.23 | HUB Endpoint 0 Rx Command/Status Register – HEP0RXCSR | . 92 |
| | 9.6.24 | HUB Endpoint 0 TX Command/Status Register – HEP0TXCSR | . 93 |
| | | HUB Endpoint 1 TX Command/Status Register – HEP1TXCSR | |
| | 9.6.26 | HUB Endpoint 0 RX Count Register – HEP0RXCTR | . 95 |
| | 9.6.27 | HUB Endpoint 0 TX count Register – HEP0TXCTR | . 95 |
| | 9.6.28 | HUB Endpoint 0 RX Data Register – HEP0RXDAR | . 95 |
| | 9.6.29 | HUB Endpoint 0 TX Data Register – HEP0TXDAR | . 95 |
| | 9.6.30 | HUB Endpoint 1 TX Data Register – HEP1TXDAR | . 95 |
| | 9.6.31 | HUB Port Control Register – HPCONR | . 96 |
| | 9.6.32 | HUB Port State Register – HPSTAR | . 97 |
| | 9.6.33 | Hub Status Register – HSR | . 97 |
| | 9.6.34 | Hub Port X Status Register – HPSR1/2/3/4 | . 98 |
| | 9.6.35 | Hub PortX Status Change Register – HPSCR1/2/3/4 | . 99 |
| | 9.6.36 | Frame Number Low-Byte Register – FNLR | . 99 |
| | 9.6.37 | Frame Number High-Byte Register – FNHR | . 99 |
| Direc | ction Se | erial Peripheral Interface (SPI)1 | 100 |
| 10.1 | Introdu | ction1 | 00 |
| | | es1 | |
| | | Diagram | |
| | | - | |
| | | eiver Timing1 | |
| | | lated Registers1 | |
| 10.6 | Functio | on Description1 | 02 |

10



| | 10.6.1 Block Diagram Description | |
|----|---|-------|
| | 10.6.2 Signal & Pin Description | |
| 11 | Analog-to-Digital Converter (ADC) | |
| | 11.1 ADC Control Registers | |
| | 11.2 Programming Steps/Considerations | |
| 12 | Dual Pulse Width Modulations (PWM0 and PWM1) | |
| | 12.1 Overview | |
| | 12.2 PWM Control Registers | 108 |
| | 12.3 PWM Programming Procedures/Steps | . 110 |
| 13 | Interrupts | .110 |
| | 13.1 Introduction | . 110 |
| 14 | Circuitry of Input and Output Pins | |
| | 14.1 Introduction | |
| 15 | Timer/Counter System | .113 |
| | 15.1 Introduction | |
| | 15.2 Time Clock Counter (TCC) | |
| | 15.2.1 Block Diagram of TCC | |
| | 15.2.2 TCC Control Registers | |
| | 15.2.3 TCC Programming Procedures/Steps | |
| | 15.3 Free Run Counter 15.3.1 Block Diagram of FRC | |
| | 15.3.2 FRC Control Registers | |
| | 15.3.3 FRC Programming Procedures/Steps | |
| 16 | Reset and Wake Up | |
| | 16.1 Reset | |
| | 16.2 The Status of RST, T, and P of the STATUS Register | |
| | 16.3 System Set-up (SSU) Time | |
| | 16.4 Wake-up Procedure on Power-on Reset | |
| 17 | Oscillators | |
| | 17.1 Introduction | . 119 |
| | 17.2 Clock Signal Distribution | . 119 |
| | 17.3 PLL Oscillator | . 119 |
| 18 | Low-Power Mode | . 120 |
| | 18.1 Introduction | . 120 |
| | 18.2 Green Mode | . 120 |
| | 18.3 Sleep Mode | . 121 |
| 19 | Instruction Description | 121 |
| | 19.1 Instruction Set Summary | 121 |
| 20 | Electrical Characteristics | 124 |
| | 20.1 Absolute Maximum Ratings | 124 |



| 21 | Application Circuit | . 127 |
|----|---|-------|
| | 20.4.2 BB | 126 |
| | 20.4.1 MCU | 125 |
| | 20.4 AC Electrical Characteristic | . 125 |
| | 20.3 Voltage Detector Electrical Characteristic | . 125 |
| | 20.2 DC Electrical Characteristic | . 124 |

APPENDIX

| Α | Package Type | 128 |
|---|---------------------|-----|
| В | Package Information | 128 |

Specification Revision History

| Doc. Version | Revision Description | Date |
|--------------|------------------------------|------------|
| 1.0 | Initial new released version | 2007/07/31 |



1 General Description

The EM77F900 from ELAN Technology is a low-cost and high performance 8-bit CMOS advance RISC architecture microcontroller device. It has an on-chip 1-Mbps RF driver Baseband (BB), Universal Serial Bus Hub (USB Hub), Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI), dual Pulse Width Modulation (PWM) with 16-bit resolution, an 8-bit Timer Clock Counter (TCC) and a 16-bit Free Run Timer, multi-channel Analog to Digital Converter (ADC) with 10-bit resolution, Key Wake-up function (KWU), Power-on Reset (POR), Watchdog Timer (WDT), security Protection Bit, and power saving Sleep Mode. All these features combine to ensure applications require the least external components, hence, not only reduce system cost, but also have the advantage of low power consumption and enhanced device reliability.

The 100-pin EM77F900 is available in a very cost-effective flash version. It is also suitable and flexible for any quantities of volume production.

2 Features

- 2.1 Core
 - Operating Voltage Range: 2.2V ~ 3.6V DC (ADC reference volt 3V)
 - Operating Temperature Range: 0°C ~ 70°C
 - Operating Frequency Range: DC ~ 48MHz (1 clock/cycle)
 - 6 MHz external clock source
 - 6/12/24 MHz Core & WM clock
 - 48 MHz internal USB HUB clock
 - 16K x 16 bits on-chip Program ROM
 - 1.3K x 8 bits on-chip Register (SRAM) plus USB indirect addressing RAM
 - Watchdog Timer (WDT)
 - 16-level stacks for both CALL and interrupt subroutine
 - Internal Power-on Reset (POR) function
 - Code protection function available
 - All single cycle (1 clock) instruction except for conditional branches which are two or three cycles
 - Direct, indirect and relative addressing modes
 - Low power, high speed CMOS technology



- Power consumption:
 - < 4 mA @ 3.3V, 6 MHz
 - < 1 µA standby current

2.2 Oscillators/System Clocks

- Three oscillator options:
 - High frequency Crystal oscillator/Resonator
 - PLL oscillator: 6MHz, 12 MHz, 24 MHz, and 48 MHz (External crystal should be 6 MHz).
 - External RC oscillator
- Three modes of system clocks:
 - Sleep mode
 - Green mode
 - Normal mode
- External RC oscillator for Power-on Reset (POR) and Watchdog Timer (WDT)

2.3 Input and Output (I/O) Pins

- Max. of 42 I/O pins
- Pull-up resistor options
- Key Wake-up function
- Open drain output options

2.4 Timers and Counters

- Programmable 8-bit real Time Clock/Counter (TCC) with prescaler and overflow interrupt
- 16-bit Free Run Counter (FRC) with overflow interrupt

2.5 Interrupt Sources and Features

- Hardware priority check
- Different interrupt vectors
- Interrupts
 - Key Wake up
 - External pin interrupt
 - 16-bit Free Run Counter Overflow



- TCC (time-base) overflow
- Read Buffer Full Interrupt in Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI);
- Complete Analog-to-digital conversion (ADC)
- One complete period of Pulse Width Modulation (PWM)
- Baseband (BB) function interrupts:
 - CSD: carrier sense detection
 - TX_AE: TX_FIFO almost full
 - RX_AF: RX_FIFO almost full
 - TX_EMPTY: finish transmitting a package
 - RX_OF: RX_FIFO overflow
 - LINK_DIS: zero counter capacitor discharge mechanism
 - LOCK_OUT: finish receiving a package
 - LOCK_IN: start receiving a package
- USB Hub function interrupts:
 - Endpoint 0 Interrupt Event:
 - INT0RX: EP0 USB RX Event
 - > INT0TX: EP0 USB TX Event
 - > INT0IN: EP0 USB IN Token Event
 - Endpoint X Interrupt Event:
 - > INT1: EP1 Interrupt
 - INT2: EP2 Interrupt
 - INT3: EP3 Interrupt
 - Device State Interrupt Event:
 - > RSTINT: USB Bus Reset Event Detect
 - > IDLEINT: USB Bus Suspend Detect
 - > RUEINT: Enable USB Bus Resume Detect
 - > FRWPINT: Function Remote Wake-up Interrupt
 - Hub Interrupt Event:
 - > HINTORX: Hub EP0 USB RX Event
 - > HINT0TX: Hub EP0 USB TX Event
 - > HINT0IN: Hub EP0 USB IN Token Event
 - > HINT1: Hub EP1 Interrupt
 - Hub State Interrupt Event:
 - > EOF1INT: EOF1 Interrupt
 - EOF2INT: EOF2 Interrupt
 - > SOFINT: Start of Frame Interrupt
 - > HPSTSCINT: Hub and Port Status Change Interrupt



2.6 Baseband

- Serial to Parallel conversion of RFW102 interface
- Input FIFO (RX_FIFO)
- Output FIFO (TX_FIFO)
- Preamble Correlation
- Packet Address Filter (unique Network)
- CRC calculation
- Inter-RFWAVES networks Carrier-sense
- Discharge of RFW-102 reference capacitor
- Compensate for clock drifts between the transmitting EM77F900 and the receiving EM77F900 up to 1000ppm. Hence, the EM77F900 requires low performance crystal
- Interrupt Driver

2.7 Universal Serial Bus HUB (USB HUB)

- One-to-Three Built-in USB HUB with embedded function
 - One upstream port capable of full speed (12 Mbps, 2 lines D+/D-)
 - Up to three downstream ports capable of full speed (12Mbps)
 - 5V supplied from PC USB interface
- USB Specification Compliance
 - Conforms to USB specification, version 1.1.
 - Conforms to USB Human Interface Device (HID) Specification, version 1.1

2.8 Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI)

- Either MSB or LBS can be remitted/received first
- Both Master and Slave modes available

2.9 Pulse Width Modulation (PWM)

Dual Pulse Width Modulation (PWM) with 16-bit resolution

2.10 Analog-to-Digital Converter (ADC)

16 multi-channel Analog-to-Digital Converter with 10-bit resolution

2.11 Built-in Voltage Regulator

 Internal 3.3V regulator is used to be the power source of the MCU and the regulated output pin to provide a pull-up source for the external USB resistor on the downstream D- pin.



3 Pin Assignment

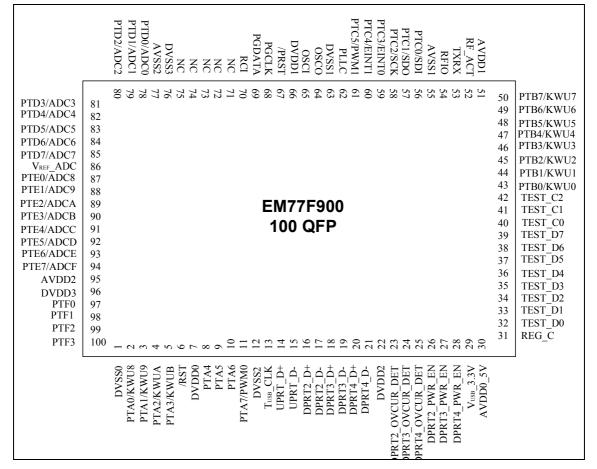


Fig. 3-1 Pad and Pin Configuration of EM77F900



4 Pin Description

| Pin No. | Symbol | Туре | Smith Trigger | Pull High /50KΩ | Open Drain | Function Description |
|---------|---------------------|------|------------------|--------------------|---------------|--|
| 1 | DVSS | | - | - | - | Ground Pin |
| 2~5 | KWU8~B, PTA0~3 | I/O | _ | \checkmark | Ι | Pins 0~3 of Port A (default) Key Wake up 8~B |
| 6 | /RST | - | \checkmark | _ | _ | Reset |
| 7 | DVDD0 | _ | _ | _ | _ | Power supply for digital circuit. The value of power source should be within the range of operating voltage. 5V direct power input is not allowed. |
| 8~10 | PTA4~6 | I/O | - | \checkmark | - | Pins 4~6 of Port A |
| 11 | PWM0/PTA7 | I/O | _ | | _ | Pin 7 of Port A PWM0 output |
| 12 | DVSS2 | | _ | _ | - | Ground Pin |
| 13 | TUSB_CLK | _ | _ | _ | - | USB test clock input |
| 14 | UPRT_D+ | - | _ | _ | - | USB Hub upstream differential data plus |
| 15 | UPRT_D- | - | _ | _ | - | USB Hub upstream differential data minus |
| 16 | DPRT2_D+ | - | _ | _ | - | USB Hub downstream differential data plus |
| 17 | DPRT2_D- | _ | _ | _ | - | USB Hub downstream differential data minus |
| 18 | DPRT3_D+ | - | _ | _ | - | USB Hub downstream differential data plus |
| 19 | DPRT3_D- | _ | _ | _ | - | USB Hub downstream differential data minus |
| 20 | DPRT4_D+ | _ | _ | _ | - | USB Hub downstream differential data plus |
| 21 | DPRT4_D- | - | _ | _ | - | USB Hub downstream differential data minus |
| 22 | DVDD2 | _ | _ | _ | _ | Power supply for digital circuit. The value of power source should be within the range of operating voltage. 5V direct power input is not allowed. |
| 23 | DPRT2_OVC UR_DET | _ | _ | _ | _ | USB Hub external power switch port |
| 24 | DPRT3_OVC UR_DET | _ | _ | _ | _ | USB Hub external power switch port |
| 25 | DPRT4_OVC UR_DET | _ | _ | _ | _ | USB Hub external power switch port |
| 26 | DPRT2_PWR _EN | _ | _ | - | _ | USB Hub external power switch enable port |
| 27 | DPRT3_PWR _EN | _ | _ | _ | _ | USB Hub external power switch enable port |

 Table 3.2-2: Corresponding relationship between the pad and pins of EM77F900



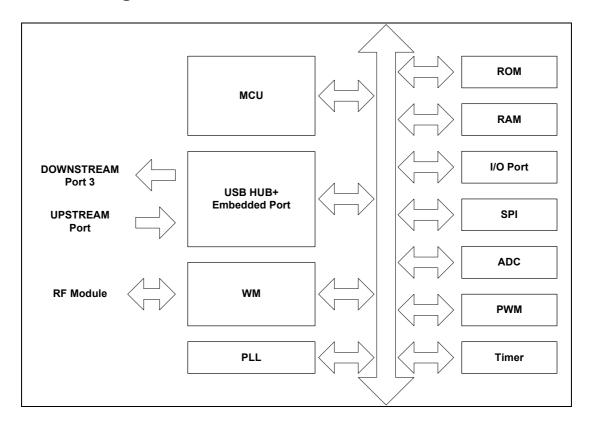
| Pin No. | Symbol | Туре | Schmitt Trigger | Pull-high /50KΩ | Open Drain | Function Description | | |
|---------|-------------------|------|--------------------|--------------------|---------------|--|--|--|
| 28 | DPRT4_PWR _EN | _ | _ | _ | _ | USB Hub external power switch enable port | | |
| 29 | VUSB_3.3V | - | _ | _ | _ | 3.3V stable output | | |
| | | | | | | 5V USB Power source input pin. | | |
| 30 | AVDD0_5V | _ | _ | _ | _ | If REG_C pin is connected to GND: enable regulator function. USB 5V power will be regulated down to 3.3V as whole chip operating power source. | | |
| | | | | | | If connected to VDD: disable regulator function. VDD_5V pin has to be connected with 3.3V power source. 5V power source is not allowed. | | |
| 31 | REG_C | Ι | _ | _ | _ | USB 5V-to-3.3V internal regulator enable/disable control pin. | | |
| 32~39 | TEST_D0~7 | I/O | | | I | Test data pin | | |
| 40~42 | TEST_C0~2 | Ι | _ | _ | - | Test command pin | | |
| 43~50 | KWU0~7, PTB0~7 | I/O | - | | \checkmark | Pin 0~7 of Port B (default) Key Wake up 0~7 | | |
| 51 | AVDD1 | _ | _ | _ | _ | Power supply for WM circuit. The value of the power source should be within the range of the operating voltage. 5V direct power input is not allowed. | | |
| 52 | RF_ACT | 0 | - | - | - | WM/RF Active | | |
| 53 | TXRX | 0 | _ | _ | _ | Transceiver modes control | | |
| 54 | RFIO | I/O | _ | \checkmark | _ | Transceiver to/from RF modem | | |
| 55 | AVSS1 | - | _ | _ | _ | Ground Pin for WM circuit | | |
| 56 | SDI/PTC0 | I/O | | | _ | Data in of SPI Pin 0 of Port C | | |
| 57 | SDO/PTC1 | I/O | | | _ | Data out of SPI Pin 1 of Port C | | |
| 58 | SCK/PTC2 | I/O | | | _ | Clock of SPI Pin 2 of Port C | | |
| 59 | EINT0/ PTC3 | I/O | _ | | _ | External interrupt Pin 0 Pin 3 of Port C | | |
| 60 | EINT1/ PTC4 | I/O | _ | | _ | External interrupt Pin 1 Pin 4 of Port C | | |
| 61 | PWM1/PTC5 | I/O | _ | | - | Pin 5 of Port C PWM1 output | | |



| Pin No. | Symbol | Туре | Schmitt Trigger | Pull-high /50KΩ | Open Drain | Function Description | | |
|---------|-------------------|------|--------------------|--------------------|---------------|---|--|--|
| 62 | PLLC | I | _ | _ | Ι | External capacitor for PLL circuit | | |
| 63 | DVSS1 | - | _ | - | Ι | Ground Pin | | |
| 64 | OSCO | 0 | _ | _ | Ι | Output of crystal oscillator | | |
| 65 | OSCI | Ι | - | - | - | Input of crystal oscillator | | |
| 66 | DVDD1 | - | _ | _ | _ | Power supply for digital circuit. The value of power source should be within the range of operating voltage. 5V direct power input is not allowed. | | |
| 67 | /PRST | - | _ | _ | - | Programming reset pin | | |
| 68 | PGCLK | - | _ | _ | - | Programming clock input pin | | |
| 69 | PGDATA | - | _ | - | Ι | Programming data pin | | |
| 70 | RCI | Ι | _ | _ | Ι | Input of RC oscillator | | |
| 71~75 | NC | - | _ | _ | - | No use | | |
| 76 | DVSS3 | - | - | - | - | Ground pin | | |
| 77 | AVSS2 | - | _ | - | Ι | Ground Pin for ADC | | |
| 78~85 | PTD0~7, ADC0~7 | I/O | - | \checkmark | _ | Pins 0~7 of Port D Input 0~7 of ADC | | |
| 86 | VREF_ADC | Ι | _ | | - | Reference voltage for ADC | | |
| 87~94 | PTE0~7, ADC8~F | I/O | _ | | _ | Pins 0~7 of Port E Input 8~F of ADC | | |
| 95 | AVDD2 | _ | _ | _ | _ | Power supply for ADC circuit. The value of the power source should be within the range of the operating voltage. 5V direct power input is not allowed. | | |
| 96 | DVDD3 | - | _ | _ | _ | Power supply for digital circuit. The value of power source should be within the range of operating voltage. 5V direct power input is not allowed. | | |
| 97~100 | PTF0~3 | I/O | _ | \checkmark | - | Pins 0~3 of Port F | | |



5 Block Diagram





6 Memory

6.1 Program Memory

The EM77F900 has a 14-bit program counter (PC). The program memory space, which is partitioned into two pages can address up to 16K. Each page has 8K in length. Fig. 6-1 depicts the profile of the program memory and stack. The initial address is 0x0000. The table of the interrupt-vectors starts from 0x10 to 0xA8 with every other eight-address space.

| | | HPC+LPC | | | INT CALL | | | | | |
|------|-----------|---------------|---------------------|---------|-------------|--------|--------|------------|--------|-----|
| PC13 | PC12 PC11 | PC10 PC | PC8 | PC7~PC0 | | STACK0 |] | | | |
| | | | | | RET | STACK1 | | | | |
| | | | | | RETI | STACK2 | | | | |
| | ROMPS | Page | | | STACK3 | | | | | |
| | 0 | 0000~1FFF | 0 | | | STACK4 | | | | |
| | 1 | 2000~3FFF | 1 | | | STACK5 | | | | |
| | | 16K ROM | | | | STACK6 |] | | | |
| | Address | | ctor | | | STACK7 | 1 | | | |
| | 0000 | | SET | | | STACK8 | | | | |
| | 0010 | | UA,B | | | STACK9 | | | | |
| | 0010 | | UA,B Т0,1 | | | STACKA | | | | |
| | 0020 | | RC | | | STACKB | | | | |
| | 0020 | | cc | | | STACKC | | | | |
| | 0030 | | (SPI) | | | STACKD | ACCD | RAMBS0D | ROMPSD | SRD |
| | 0038 | | | | | STACKE | ACCE | RAMBS0E | ROMPSE | SRE |
| | 0040 | | M0,1 | | | STACKF | ACCF | RAMBSOF | ROMPSF | SRF |
| | 0048 | | SD | | | | 16-lev | /el Stacks | | |
| | 0050 | | AE | | | | | | | |
| | 0058 | | | | | | | | | |
| | 0060 | | MPTY | | | | | | | |
| | 0068 | | _OF | | | | | | | |
| | 0070 | LINK | (_DIS | | | | | | | |
| | 0078 | LOCK | COUT | | | | | | | |
| | 0080 | LOC | K_IN | | | | | | | |
| | 0088 | INTOR | X,TX,IN | | | | | | | |
| | 0090 | INT | 1,2,3 | | | | | | | |
| | 0098 | | ,IDLEINT, FRWPIN | | | | | | | |
| | 00A0 | HINTORX, T | X, IN, HINT | ٢1 | | | | | | |
| | 00A8 | | , EOF2, IPSTSC | | | | | | | |
| | In | nterrupt Vect | ors | | | | | | | |

Fig. 6-1 Configuration of Program Memory (ROM) for EM77F900



6.2 RAM-Register

A total of 1368 accessible bytes of data memory are available for the EM77F900. By function, they are classified into general purpose registers, system control / configuration registers, specification purpose registers, USB control/status registers, baseband (BB) control/status registers, SPI control/status registers, timer/counter registers, and I/O port status/control registers. All of the above registers except I/O ports and their related control registers are implemented as static RAM. The RAM configurations are shown in Fig. 6-2.

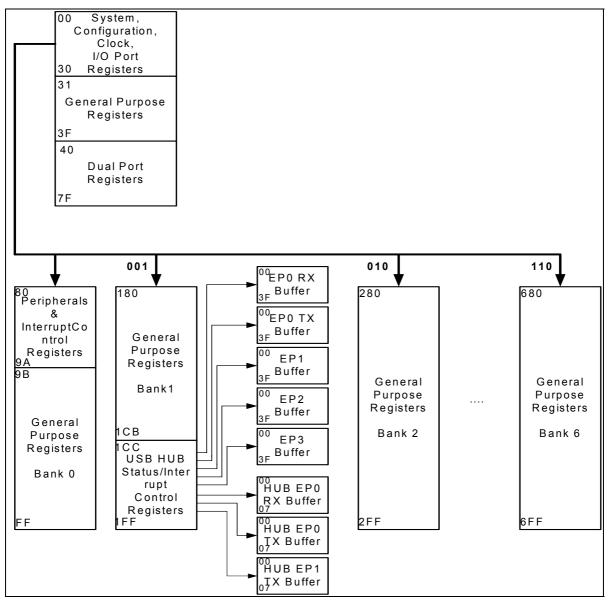


Fig. 6-2 Data Memory Configuration (RAM) of EM77F900



| | · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · | The table is a su | mmary o | ot all regi | sters exc | ept gene | eral purpo | ose regis | sters. | |
|-------|---|-------------------|---------|-------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|-----------|
| Addr | Name | Reset Type | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
| | | Full Name | | | Indirect | Addressin | g Register | contents | | |
| | AddrNamex00IAC0x01HPCx02LPCx03SRx04RAMBS0 | Bit Name | IAC07 | IAC06 | IAC05 | IAC04 | IAC03 | IAC02 | IAC01 | IAC00 |
| 0×00 | | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0,000 | IAC0 | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | М | ost Signific | ant Byte o | f Programr | ning Count | er | |
| | | Bit Name | PC7 | PC6 | PC5 | PC4 | PC3 | PC2 | PC1 | PC0 |
| 004 | | Read/Write (R/W) | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R |
| 0x01 | HPC | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Jump to | the corres | ponding int | errupt vect | or or contir | nue to exec | ute next in | struction |
| | | Full Name | | Le | east Signifi | cant Byte c | f Program | ming Coun | ter | |
| | | Bit Name | PCF | PCE | PCD | PCC | PCB | PCA | PC9 | PC8 |
| 0,000 | | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0x02 | LPC | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Jump to | the corres | ponding int | errupt vect | or or contir | nue to exec | ute next in | struction |
| | | Full Name | | | | Status I | Register | | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | - | RST | т | Р | Z | DC | С |
| 0.00 | 00 | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0x03 | SK | Power-on | - | - | 0 | 1 | 1 | U | U | U |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | Р | Т | Т | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | Р | Т | Т | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | | RAM Ban | k Select 0 | | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | - | - | - | - | RBS02 | RBS01 | RBS00 |
| 0.04 | DAMPOO | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | - | - | - | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0x04 | RAMBSU | Power-on | - | - | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | - | - | - | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | | ROM Pa | ge Select | | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | RPS0 |
| 005 | DOMES | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | R/W |
| 0x05 | ROMPS | Power-on | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | Р |

The table is a summary of all registers except general purpose registers.



| Addr | Name | Reset Type | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|------|-----------|------------------|-------|-------|-------------|--------------|--------------|-------------|----------|----------|
| | | Full Name | | | Indi | rect Addre | ssing Point | er 0 | | |
| | | Bit Name | IAP07 | IAP06 | IAP05 | IAP04 | IAP03 | IAP02 | IAP01 | IAP00 |
| 000 | | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0x06 | IAP0 | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | | RAM Ban | k Select 1 | | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | - | - | - | - | RBS12 | RBS11 | RBS10 |
| 0x07 | RAMBS1 | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | - | - | - | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0x07 | KAIVIDO I | Power-on | - | - | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | - | - | - | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | Indi | rect Addre | ssing Point | er 1 | | |
| | | Bit Name | IAP17 | IAP16 | IAP15 | IAP14 | IAP13 | IAP12 | IAP11 | IAP10 |
| 0x08 | IAP1 | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0,00 | | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | Indir | ect Addres | sing Conte | nts 1 | | |
| | | Bit Name | IAC17 | IAC16 | IAC15 | IAC14 | IAC13 | IAC12 | IAC11 | IAC10 |
| 0x09 | IAC1 | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0.03 | IACT | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | Indi | rect Addres | ss Pointer I | Direction C | ontrol Regi | ister | |
| | | Bit Name | - | - | - | - | IAP1_D | IAP0_D | IAP1_D_E | IAP0_D_E |
| 0x0A | IAPDR | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | - | - | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| UXUA | IAFDR | Power-on | - | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | - | - | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | Least Si | gnificant B | yte of Table | e Lookup | | |
| | | Bit Name | TBL7 | TBL6 | TBL5 | TBL4 | TBL3 | TBL2 | TBL1 | TBL0 |
| 0x0B | LTBL | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| UNUD | | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |



| Addr | Name | Reset Type | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|------|--------|------------------|--------|--------|----------|--------------|-------------|----------|--------|--------|
| | | Full Name | | | Most Sig | gnificant By | te of Table | e Lookup | | |
| | | Bit Name | TBLF | TBLE | TBLD | TBLC | TBLB | TBLA | TBL9 | TBL8 |
| 0.00 | | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0x0C | HTBL | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | | Stack | Pointer | | | |
| | | Bit Name | STKPT7 | STKPT6 | STKPT5 | STKPT4 | STKPT3 | STKPT2 | STKPT1 | STKPT0 |
| 0x0D | STKPTR | Read/Write (R/W) | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R |
| UXUD | SINPIR | Power-on | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | | Repeat | Pointer | | | |
| | | Bit Name | RPTC7 | RPTC6 | RPTC5 | RPTC4 | RPTC3 | RPTC2 | RPTC1 | RPTC0 |
| 0x0E | RPTC | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| UXUE | REIC | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | | Prescale | Counter | | | |
| | | Bit Name | PRC7 | PRC6 | PRC5 | PRC4 | PRC3 | PRC2 | PRC1 | PRC0 |
| 0x0F | PRC | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0,01 | FRO | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Full Name | | | | Time Cloc | k/Counter | | | |
| | | Bit Name | TCC7 | TCC6 | TCC5 | TCC4 | TCC3 | TCC2 | TCC1 | TCC0 |
| 0x10 | тсс | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0.00 | 100 | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Full Name | | | | Interru | pt Flag | | | |
| | | Bit Name | ADIF | RBFIF | PWM1IF | PWM0IF | EINT1F | EINT0F | TCCOF | FRCOF |
| 0x11 | INTF | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| UXTI | | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |



| Addr | Name | Reset Type | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|------|--------|------------------|--------|--------|--------|-------------|---------------|---------|--------|--------|
| | | Full Name | | | Port A | Key Wake | -up Interru | pt Flag | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | - | - | - | KWUBIF | KWUAIF | KWU9IF | KWU8IF |
| 0x12 | KWUAIF | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | - | - | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0712 | RWUAII | Power-on | - | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | - | - | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | Port B | Key Wake | -up Interru | pt Flag | | |
| | | Bit Name | KWU7IF | KWU6IF | KWU5IF | KWU4IF | KWU3IF | KWU2IF | KWU1IF | KWU0IF |
| 0x13 | KWUBIF | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0.15 | RWOBI | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | Gene | ral Purpos | e I/O port, I | Port A | | |
| | | Bit Name | PTA7 | PTA6 | PTA5 | PTA4 | PTA3 | PTA2 | PTA1 | PTA0 |
| 0x14 | PTA | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0214 | FIA | Power-on | U | U | U | U | U | U | U | U |
| | | /RESET and WDT | U | U | U | U | U | U | U | U |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | Gene | ral Purpos | e I/O port, I | Port B | | |
| | | Bit Name | PTB7 | PTB6 | PTB5 | PTB4 | PTB3 | PTB2 | PTB1 | PTB0 |
| 0x15 | РТВ | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0,10 | 110 | Power-on | U | U | U | U | U | U | U | U |
| | | /RESET and WDT | U | U | U | U | U | U | U | U |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | Gene | ral Purpose | e I/O port, I | Port C | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | - | PTC5 | PTC4 | PTC3 | PTC2 | PTC1 | PTC0 |
| 0x16 | PTC | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0,10 | 110 | Power-on | - | - | U | U | U | U | U | U |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | U | U | U | U | U | U |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | Gene | ral Purpose | e I/O port, I | Port D | | |
| | | Bit Name | PTD7 | PTD6 | PTD5 | PTD4 | PTD3 | PTD2 | PTD1 | PTD0 |
| 0x17 | PTD | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0.17 | ΓIU | Power-on | U | U | U | U | U | U | U | U |
| | | /RESET and WDT | U | U | U | U | U | U | U | U |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |



| Addr | Name | Reset Type | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|------------------|-------|----------|---------------|--------------|---------------|------------|---------|-------|
| | | Full Name | | | Gene | al Purpose | e I/O port, F | Port E | | |
| | | Bit Name | PTE7 | PTE6 | PTE5 | PTE4 | PTE3 | PTE2 | PTE1 | PTE0 |
| 0.10 | PTE | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0x18 | PIE | Power-on | U | U | U | U | U | U | U | U |
| | | /RESET and WDT | U | U | U | U | U | U | U | U |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | Gene | ral Purpose | e I/O port, I | Port F | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | - | - | - | PTF3 | PTF2 | PTF1 | PTF0 |
| 0.10 | PTF | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | - | - | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0x19 | PIF | Power-on | - | - | - | - | U | U | U | U |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | - | - | U | U | U | U |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | - | - | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | Leas | t significan | t Byte of th | e 16-bit Fre | ee Run Co | unter | |
| | | Bit Name | FRC7 | FRC6 | FRC5 | FRC4 | FRC3 | FRC2 | FRC1 | FRC0 |
| 0x1A | LFRC | Read/Write (R/W) | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R |
| UXIA | LFRG | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Full Name | | Мс | ost significa | ant Byte of | 16-bit Free | Run Coun | ter | |
| | | Bit Name | FRCF | FRCE | FRCD | FRCC | FRCB | FRCA | FRC9 | FRC8 |
| 0x1B | HFRC | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| UX ID | | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Full Name | | Least si | gnificant By | /te Buffer o | f the 16-bit | Free Run | Counter | |
| | | Bit Name | FRCB7 | FRCB6 | FRCB5 | FRCB4 | FRCB3 | FRCB2 | FRCB1 | FRCB0 |
| 0x1C | LFRCB | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| | | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Full Name | | 1 | Serial Per | ipheral Inte | erface Read | d Register | | |
| | | Bit Name | SPIR7 | SPIR6 | SPIR5 | SPIR4 | SPIR3 | SPIR2 | SPIR1 | SPIR0 |
| 0x1D | SPIRB | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| | | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |



| Addr | Name | Reset Type | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|--------|---------|------------------|-------|-------|------------|--------------|---------------------|------------|-------|-------|
| | | Full Name | | | Serial Per | ipheral Inte | erface Write | e Register | | |
| | | Bit Name | SPIW7 | SPIW6 | SPIW5 | SPIW4 | SPIW3 | SPIW2 | SPIW1 | SPIW0 |
| 0x1E | SPIWB | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| UXIE | SPIND | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | MSE | Convertin | g Value of | ADC | | |
| | | Bit Name | ADD9 | ADD8 | ADD7 | ADD6 | ADD5 | ADD4 | ADD3 | ADD2 |
| 0x1F | ADDATAH | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| UXIF | | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | LSB | Converting | g Value of <i>i</i> | ADC | | |
| | | Bit Name | ADD1 | ADD0 | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 0x20 | ADDATAL | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| 0x20 | ADDATAL | Power-on | 0 | 0 | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| | | Full Name | | | D | uty of PWN | /0-Low By | te | | |
| | | Bit Name | DT07 | DT06 | DT05 | DT04 | DT03 | DT02 | DT01 | DT00 |
| 0x21 | DTOL | Read/Write (R/W) | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R |
| 0,72,1 | DIOL | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | D | uty of PWN | /I0-High By | te | | |
| | | Bit Name | DT0F | DT0E | DT0D | DT0C | DT0B | DT0A | DT09 | DT08 |
| 0x22 | DT0H | Read/Write (R/W) | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R |
| 0x22 | | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | Pe | riod of PW | M0- Low B | yte | | |
| | | Bit Name | PRD07 | PRD06 | PRD05 | PRD04 | PRD03 | PRD02 | PRD01 | PRD00 |
| 0x23 | PRD0L | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0X23 | FRUUL | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |



| Addr | Name | Reset Type | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|------|-------|------------------|-------|-------|-------|------------|-------------|-------|-------|-------|
| | | Full Name | | | Pe | riod of PW | M0- High B | yte | | |
| | | Bit Name | PRD0F | PRD0E | PRD0D | PRD0C | PRD0B | PRD0A | PRD09 | PRD08 |
| 0x24 | PRD0H | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0X24 | PRDUN | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | Duty | Latch of P | WM0-Low | Byte | | |
| | | Bit Name | DL07 | DL06 | DL05 | DL04 | DL03 | DL02 | DL01 | DL00 |
| 0x25 | DLOL | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0,25 | DLUL | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Ρ | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | Duty | Latch of P | WM0-High | Byte | | |
| | | Bit Name | DL0F | DL0E | DL0D | DL0C | DL0B | DL0A | DL019 | DL08 |
| 0x26 | DL0H | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0,20 | DLOIT | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | D | uty of PWI | M1-Low By | te | | |
| | | Bit Name | DT17 | DT16 | DT15 | DT14 | DT13 | DT12 | DT11 | DT10 |
| 0x27 | DT1L | Read/Write (R/W) | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R |
| 0,27 | DITL | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | D | uty of PWN | /11-High By | te | | |
| | | Bit Name | DT1F | DT1E | DT1D | DT1C | DT1B | DT1A | DT19 | DT18 |
| 0x28 | DT1H | Read/Write (R/W) | R | R/ | R | R | R | R | R | R |
| 0,20 | | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | Pe | riod of PW | M1- Low B | yte | | |
| | | Bit Name | PRD17 | PRD16 | PRD15 | PRD14 | PRD13 | PRD12 | PRD1 | PRD10 |
| 0x29 | PRD1L | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0,29 | | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Ρ | Р | Р | Р | Р |



| Addr | Name | Reset Type | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|------|-------|------------------|-------|-------|---------|-------------|--------------|----------|-------|-------|
| | | Full Name | | | Pe | riod of PWI | M1- High B | yte | | |
| | | Bit Name | PRD1F | PRD1E | PRD1D | PRD1C | PRD1B | PRD1A | PRD19 | PRD18 |
| 0x2A | PRD1H | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| UXZA | PRUIN | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | Duty | Latch of P | WM1-Low | Byte | | |
| | | Bit Name | DL17 | DL16 | DL15 | DL14 | DL13 | DL12 | DL11 | DL10 |
| 0x2B | DL1L | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| UX2D | DLIL | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | Duty | Latch of P | WM1-High | Byte | | |
| | | Bit Name | DL1F | DL1E | DL1D | DL1C | DL1B | DL1A | DL19 | DL18 |
| 0x2C | DL1H | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0,20 | DEIII | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | , | WM Addre | ss Register | ſ | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | - | - | AAR4 | AAR3 | AAAR2 | AAR1 | AAR0 |
| 0x2D | RFAAR | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | - | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0,20 | | Power-on | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | - | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | | BB Data | a Buffer | | - | |
| | | Bit Name | RFDB7 | RFDB6 | RFDB5 | RFDB4 | RFDB3 | RFDB2 | RFDB1 | RFDB0 |
| 0x2E | RFDB | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| UNZL | | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | BB Data | a Read/Wri | te Control I | Register | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | - | - | - | - | RRST | RFRD | RFWR |
| 0x2F | RFACR | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | - | - | - | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| UAZE | | Power-on | - | - | - | - | - | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | - | - | - | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | - | - | - | Р | Р | Р |



| Addr | Name | Reset Type | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-----------|--------|------------------|-------|--------|-----------|--------------|-------------|------------|-----------|----------|
| | | Full Name | | | BE | 3 Interrupt | Flag Regist | ter | | |
| | | Bit Name | CSDF | TX_AEF | RX_AFF | TX_EMPTYF | RX_OFF | LINK_DISF | LOCK_OUTF | LOCK_INF |
| 020 | RFINTF | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0x30 | REINTE | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | Dual | Port Regis | ters (64 in | total) | | |
| | | Bit Name | DPR7 | DPR6 | DPR5 | DPR4 | DPR3 | DPR2 | DPR1 | DPR0 |
| 0x40 ~ | DPR | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0x7F | DFK | Power-on | х | х | х | х | х | х | х | х |
| | | /RESET and WDT | х | х | х | х | х | х | х | х |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Ρ | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | Pe | ripheral Fu | nction Ena | ble | | |
| | | Bit Name | SPIE | USBE | WME | ADE | PWM1E | PWM0E | TCCE | FRCE |
| 0x80 | PRIE | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0,00 | | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | Interr | upt Enable | Control Re | gister | | |
| | | Bit Name | GIE | RBFIE | PWM1IE | PWM0IE | EINT1E | EINT0E | TCCOE | FRCOE |
| 0x81 | INTE | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0.01 | | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | Port A | A Key Wak | e-up Interru | upt Enable | Control Re | gister | |
| | | Bit Name | - | - | - | - | KWUBE | KWUAE | KWU9E | KWU8E |
| 0x82 | KWUAIE | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | - | - | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0702 | RWOAL | Power-on | - | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | - | - | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | Port E | 3 Key Wak | e-up Interru | upt Enable | Control Re | gister | |
| | | Bit Name | KWU7E | KWU6E | KWU5E | KWU4E | KWU3E | KWU2E | KWU1E | KWU0E |
| 0x83 | KWUBIE | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0,00 | | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |



| Addr | Name | Reset Type | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|------|--------|------------------|---------|-------|-------------|--------------|--------------|------------|---------|---------|
| | | Full Name | | | Exte | rnal Interru | pt Edge Co | ontrol | | |
| | | Bit Name | | - | - | - | - | - | EINT1ED | EINT0ED |
| 0x84 | EINTED | Read/Write (R/W) | | - | - | - | - | - | R/W | R/W |
| 0x04 | EINTED | Power-on | | - | - | - | - | - | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | | - | - | - | - | - | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | | - | - | - | - | - | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | Seria | l Periphera | I Serial (SI | PI) Enable | Control Re | gister | |
| | | Bit Name | SPI_RBF | CES | SBR2 | SBR1 | SBR0 | SDID | SDOD | SPIS |
| 0x85 | SPIC | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0.05 | GFIC | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Full Name | | | | I/O Contro | ol of Port A | | | |
| | | Bit Name | IOCA7 | IOCA6 | IOCA5 | IOCA4 | IOCA3 | IOCA2 | IOCA1 | IOCA0 |
| 0x86 | IOCA | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0,00 | IOCA | Power-on | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | | I/O Contro | ol of Port B | | | |
| | | Bit Name | IOCB7 | IOCB5 | IOCB5 | IOCB4 | IOCB3 | IOCB2 | IOCB1 | IOCB0 |
| 0x87 | IOCB | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0,01 | 1000 | Power-on | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | | I/O Contro | ol of Port C | 1 | 1 | |
| | | Bit Name | - | - | IOCC5 | IOCC4 | IOCC3 | IOCC2 | IOCC1 | IOCC0 |
| 0x88 | IOCC | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0,00 | 1000 | Power-on | - | - | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | | I/O Contro | ol of Port D | | | - |
| | | Bit Name | IOCD7 | IOCD6 | IOCD5 | IOCD4 | IOCD3 | IOCD2 | IOCD1 | IOCD0 |
| 0x89 | IOCD | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0709 | 1000 | Power-on | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |



| Addr | Name | Reset Type | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|--------|------|------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------------|--------------|-------|-------|-------|
| | | Full Name | | | | I/O Contro | ol of Port E | | | |
| | | Bit Name | IOCE7 | IOCE6 | IOCE5 | IOCE4 | IOCE3 | IOCE2 | IOCE1 | IOCE0 |
| 0.40 4 | 1005 | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0x8A | IOCE | Power-on | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | | I/O Contro | ol of Port F | | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | - | - | - | IOCF3 | IOCF2 | IOCF1 | IOCF0 |
| 0.00 | 1005 | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | - | - | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0x8B | IOCF | Power-on | - | - | - | - | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | - | - | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | - | - | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | F | ull Up cont | rol of Port | A | • | |
| | | Bit Name | PUCA7 | PUCA6 | PUCA5 | PUCA4 | PUCA3 | PUCA2 | PUCA1 | PUCA0 |
| 0x8C | PUCA | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| UXOC | PUCA | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | F | ull Up cont | rol of Port | В | | |
| | | Bit Name | PUCB7 | PUCB6 | PUCB5 | PUCB4 | PUCB3 | PUCB2 | PUCB1 | PUCB0 |
| 0x8D | PUCB | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| UXOD | FUCB | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | P | ull Up cont | rol of Port | С | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | - | PUCC5 | PUCC4 | PUCC3 | PUCC2 | PUCC1 | PUCC0 |
| 0x8E | PUCC | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| UNUL | 1000 | Power-on | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | P | ull Up cont | rol of Port | D | | |
| | | Bit Name | PUCD7 | PUCD6 | PUCD5 | PUCD4 | PUCD3 | PUCD2 | PUCD1 | PUCD0 |
| 0x8F | PUCD | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| | | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |



| Addr | Name | Reset Type | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|------|------------------|-------|-------|-------|-------------|--------------|-------|-------|-------|
| | | Full Name | | | F | ull Up cont | rol of Port | E | | |
| | | Bit Name | PUCE7 | PUCE6 | PUCE5 | PUCE2 | PUCE3 | PUCE2 | PUCE1 | PUCE0 |
| 0x90 | PUCE | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0,00 | PUCE | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | F | ull Up cont | trol of Port | F | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | - | - | - | PUCF3 | PUCF2 | PUCF1 | PUCF0 |
| 0x91 | PUCF | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | - | - | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0.001 | PUCF | Power-on | - | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | - | - | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | Op | en Drain co | ontrol of Po | rt B | | |
| | | Bit Name | OPCB7 | OPCB6 | OPCB5 | OPCB4 | OPCB3 | OPCB2 | OPCB1 | OPCB0 |
| 0x92 | ODCB | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0,92 | ODCB | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Full Name | | | Tin | ne Clock/C | ounter Con | trol | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | - | - | - | TCCS0 | PS2 | PS1 | PS0 |
| 0x93 | TCCC | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | - | - | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0,93 | 1000 | Power-on | - | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | - | - | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | Fr | ee Run Co | unter Cont | rol | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | FRCCS |
| 0x94 | FRCC | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | R/W |
| 0,94 | FRUU | Power-on | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | V | /atchdog T | imer Contr | ol | | |
| | | Bit Name | GREEN | - | - | WDTCE | - | RAT2 | RAT1 | RAT0 |
| 0x95 | WDTC | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | - | - | R/W | - | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0x95 | WDIC | Power-on | 0 | - | - | 0 | - | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | - | - | 0 | - | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | 0 | - | - | Р | - | Р | Р | Р |



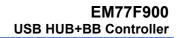
| Addr | Name | Reset Type | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | | |
|-------|---------|------------------|--------------------------------------|--------|--------|-------------|-------------|-----------|-----------|----------|--|--|
| | | Full Name | | | AD | C Analog Ir | nput Pin Se | elect | | | | |
| 0x96 | | Bit Name | - | - | IMS2 | IMS1 | IMS0 | CKR2 | CKR1 | CKR0 | | |
| | | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | | |
| | ADCAIS | Power-on | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | | |
| | | Full Name | ADC Configuration Register | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Bit Name | ADRUN | ADIE | - | - | AIPS3 | AIPS2 | AIPS1 | AIPS0 | | |
| 0.07 | 40000 | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | - | - | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | | |
| 0x97 | ADCCR | Power-on | 0 | 0 | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | - | - | Р | Р | Р | Р | | |
| | | Full Name | | | l | PWM Cont | ol Registe | r | | | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | - | - | - | S_PWM1 | S_PWM0 | - | - | | |
| 0.00 | PWMCR | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | - | - | R/W | R/W | - | - | | |
| 0x98 | | Power-on | - | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | - | - | | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | - | - | | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | - | - | Р | Р | - | - | | |
| | DEINITE | Full Name | BB Interrupt Enable Control Register | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Bit Name | CSDE | TX_AEE | RX_AFE | TX_EMPTYE | RX_OFE | LINK_DISE | LOCK_OUTE | LOCK_INE | | |
| 0x99 | | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | | |
| 0,099 | RFINTE | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | | |
| | | Full Name | | | | USB Test | Register | | | | | |
| | | Bit Name | USBT7 | USBT6 | USBT5 | USBT4 | USBT3 | USBT2 | USBT1 | USBT0 | | |
| 0.400 | | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | | |
| 0x1CC | USBTR | Power-on | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | | |
| | | Full Name | | | USE | General C | ontrol Reg | ister | | | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | - | FUNEN | FUNRST | RESUME | SUSPEND | PLUG | URST | | |
| 0x1CD | GCNTR | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | | |
| UXICD | GUNTR | Power-on | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | | |



| Addr | Name | Reset Type | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | | | |
|-------|---------|------------------|--|-------|--------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|----------------|----------------|--|--|--|
| | | Full Name | End Point 1 Control Register | | | | | | | | | | |
| 0x1CE | | Bit Name | - | - | EP1EN | - | - | EP1DIR | EP1TP1 | EP1TP0 | | | |
| | | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | R/W | | | R/W | R/W | R/W | | | |
| | EP1CNTR | Power-on | - | - | 0 | - | - | 1 | 0 | 0 | | | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | 0 | - | - | 1 | 0 | 0 | | | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | Р | - | - | Р | Р | Р | | | |
| | | Full Name | End Point 2 Control Register | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | - | EP2EN | - | - | EP2DIR | EP2TP1 | EP2TP0 | | | |
| 0.405 | | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | R/W | - | - | R/W | R/W | R/W | | | |
| 0x1CF | EP2CNTR | Power-on | - | - | 0 | - | - | 1 | 0 | 0 | | | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | 0 | - | - | 1 | 0 | 0 | | | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | Р | - | - | Р | Р | Р | | | |
| | | Full Name | | | Enc | l Point 3 C | ontrol Regi | ster | | | | | |
| | EP3CNTR | Bit Name | - | - | EP3EN | - | - | EP3DIR | EP3TP1 | EP3TP0 | | | |
| 0.400 | | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | R/W | - | - | R/W | R/W | R/W | | | |
| 0x1D0 | | Power-on | - | - | 0 | - | - | 1 | 0 | 0 | | | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | 0 | - | - | 1 | 0 | 0 | | | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | Р | - | - | Р | Р | Р | | | |
| | EPINTR | Full Name | Endpoint Interrupt Event Status Register | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | - | INT3 | INT2 | INT1 | INTOIN | INTOTX | INT0RX | | | |
| 0x1D1 | | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R | | | |
| UXIDI | | Power-on | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | | | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | 0 | | | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | | | |
| | | Full Name | | En | dpoint Inter | rupt Event | Enable Co | ontrol Regis | ster | | | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | - | INT3E | INT2E | INT1E | INTOINE | INTOTXE | INTORXE | | | |
| 0.400 | EPINTE | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | | | |
| 0x1D2 | | Power-on | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | | | |
| | | Full Name | | | State I | nterrupt Ev | ent Flag R | egister | | | | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | - | - | - | FRWPINT | RUEINT | IDLEINT | RSTINT | | | |
| 0/100 | CTANTO | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | - | - | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | | | |
| 0x1D3 | STAINTR | Power-on | - | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | | |
| | ļ | /RESET and WDT | - | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | | |
| | ł | Wake-up from Int | - | - | - | - | Р | Р | Р | Р | | | |



| Addr | Name | Reset Type | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | | |
|-------|----------|------------------|----------|-----------|------------------|-------------|------------|--------------|------------|---------|--|--|
| | | Full Name | | S | State Interru | ipt Event E | nable Con | trol Registe | er | | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | - | - | - | FRWPINTE | RUEINTE | IDLEINTE | RSTINTE | | |
| 0x1D4 | | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | - | - | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | | |
| | STAINTE | Power-on | - | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | - | - | Р | Р | Р | Р | | |
| | | Full Name | | | Function Address | | | | | | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | FADDR6 | FADDR5 | FADDR4 | FADDR3 | FADDR2 | FADDR1 | FADDR0 | | |
| 0x1D5 | FAR | Read/Write (R/W) | - | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | | |
| UXIDS | FAR | Power-on | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | | |
| | | Full Name | | | | Endpoint 0 | RX Token | | | | | |
| | EPORXIR | Bit Name | - | - | - | - | - | USETUPOW | USETUP | UOUT | | |
| 0x1D6 | | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | - | - | - | R/W | R/W | R/W | | |
| UXIDO | | Power-on | - | - | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | - | - | - | Р | Р | Р | | |
| | FORXCSR | Full Name | | | Endp | oint 0 RX C | command/S | Status | | | | |
| | | Bit Name | CDTOGORX | ERRSTSORX | STALLSTSORX | ACKSTSORX | DICCERRICK | DTOGORX | SESTALLORX | RXEN0RX | | |
| 0x1D7 | | Read/Write (R/W) | W | R | R | R | R | R | R/W | R/W | | |
| UXIDI | | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 | | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | | |
| | | Full Name | | | Endp | oint 0 TX C | command/S | Status | | | | |
| | | Bit Name | CDTOG0TX | ERRSTS0TX | STALLSTSOTX | ACKSTS0TX | - | DTOG0TX | SESTALLOTX | TXEN0TX | | |
| 0x1D8 | | Read/Write (R/W) | W | R | R | R | - | R | R/W | R/W | | |
| UXIDO | EPOTXCSR | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | - | 1 | 1 | 0 | | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | - | 1 | 1 | 0 | | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | - | Ρ | Р | Р | | |
| | | Full Name | | | Enc | lpoint 1 Co | mmand/Sta | atus | | | | |
| | | Bit Name | CDTOG1 | ERRSTS1 | STALLSTS1 | ACKSTS1 | DTOGERR1 | DTOG1 | SESTALL1 | RXTXEN1 | | |
| 0x1D9 | | Read/Write (R/W) | W | R | R | R | R | R | R/W | R/W | | |
| 07109 | EP1CSR | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | | |





| Addr | Name | Reset Type | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | | |
|-------|----------|------------------|---------------------------|----------|-----------|-------------|-----------|----------|----------|----------|--|--|
| | EP2CSR | Full Name | | | Enc | lpoint 2 Co | mmand/Sta | atus | | | | |
| 0x1DA | | Bit Name | CDTOG2 | ERRSTS2 | STALLSTS2 | ACKSTS2 | DTOGERR2 | DTOG2 | SESTALL2 | RXTXEN2 | | |
| | | Read/Write (R/W) | W | R | R | R | R | R | R/W | R/W | | |
| | LF200K | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | | |
| | | Full Name | Endpoint 3 Command/Status | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Bit Name | CDTOG3 | ERRSTS3 | STALLSTS3 | ACKSTS3 | DTOGERR3 | DTOG3 | SESTALL3 | RXTXENB | | |
| 0x1DB | EP3CSR | Read/Write (R/W) | W | R | R | R | R | R | R/W | R/W | | |
| UKIDD | EF3CSK | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 0 | | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | | |
| | | Full Name | | | | Endpoint 0 | RX Count | | | | | |
| | EPORXCIR | Bit Name | - | EPORXCT6 | EPORXCT5 | EPORXCT4 | EPORXCT3 | EPORXCT2 | EPORXCT1 | EPORXCT0 | | |
| 0.400 | | Read/Write (R/W) | - | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | | |
| 0x1DC | | Power-on | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | | |
| | FOIXCIR | Full Name | Endpoint 0 TX Count | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | EPOTXCT6 | EPOTXCT5 | EPOTXCT4 | EPOTXCT3 | EPOTXCT2 | EP0TXCT1 | EPOTXCT0 | | |
| 0.400 | | Read/Write (R/W) | - | R | R | R | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | | |
| 0x1DD | | Power-on | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | | |
| | | Full Name | | | | Endpoint | t 1 Count | | | | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | EP1CT6 | EP1CT5 | EP1CT4 | EP1CT3 | EP1CT2 | EP1CT1 | EP1CT0 | | |
| 0.405 | | Read/Write (R/W) | - | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | | |
| 0x1DE | EP1CTR | Power-on | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | | |
| | | Full Name | | | | Endpoint | 2 Count | | | | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | EP2CT6 | EP2CT5 | EP2CT4 | EP2CT3 | EPCT2 | EP2CT1 | EP2CT0 | | |
| 0.405 | EP2CTR | Read/Write (R/W) | - | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | | |
| 0x1DF | CF201K | Power-on | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | | |



| Addr | Name | Reset Type | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | | |
|-------|--------------|------------------|--------------------|--------|--------|----------|-----------|--------|--------|--------|--|--|
| | | Full Name | | | | Endpoin | t 3 count | | | | | |
| 0x1E0 | | Bit Name | - | EP3CT6 | EP3CT5 | EP3CT4 | EP3CT3 | EP3CT2 | EP3CT1 | EP3CT0 | | |
| | | Read/Write (R/W) | - | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | | |
| | EP3CTR | Power-on | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | | |
| | | Full Name | Endpoint 0 RX data | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Bit Name | EP0RX7 | EP0RX6 | EP0RX5 | EP0RX4 | EP0RX3 | EP0RX2 | EP0RX1 | EP0RX0 | | |
| 0x1E1 | EP0RXD | Read/Write (R/W) | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | | |
| UXIEI | AR | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | | |
| | | Full Name | | | | Endpoint | 0 TX data | | | | | |
| | | Bit Name | EP0TX7 | EP0TX6 | EP0TX5 | EP0TX4 | EP0TX3 | EP0TX2 | EP0TX1 | EP0TX0 | | |
| 0x1E2 | EP0TXD AR | Read/Write (R/W) | W | W | W | W | W | W | W | W | | |
| UXIEZ | | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | | |
| | EP1DAR | Full Name | Endpoint 1 data | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Bit Name | EP1D7 | EP1D6 | EP1D5 | EP1D4 | EP1D3 | EP1D2 | EP1D1 | EP1D0 | | |
| 0x1E3 | | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | | |
| UXILS | | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | | |
| | | Full Name | | | | Endpoir | nt 2 data | | | | | |
| | | Bit Name | EP2D7 | EP2D6 | EP2D5 | EP2D4 | EP2D3 | EP2D2 | EP2D1 | EP2D0 | | |
| 0x1E4 | EP2DAR | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | | |
| UXIE4 | | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | | |
| | | Full Name | | | | Endpoir | nt 3 data | | | | | |
| | EP3DAR | Bit Name | EP3D7 | EP3D6 | EP3D5 | EP3D4 | EP3D3 | EP3D2 | EP3D1 | EP3D0 | | |
| 0x1E5 | | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | | |
| UNIED | | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | | |



| Addr | Name | Reset Type | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|----------|------------------|----------------------|------------|--------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|----------|
| | | Full Name | | | Hu | ıb Global S | state Regist | ter | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | - | CONFG | RMWUPEN | PWRM | PWRSWM | PWRS/W | OVCM |
| 0.450 | | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0x1E6 | HGSR | Power-on | - | - | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | 0 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 | 1 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | Hub Ir | nterrupt Ev | ent Flag Re | egister | | |
| | | Bit Name | HPSTSONT | SOFINT | EOF2INT | EOF1INT | HINT1 | HINT0IN | HINTOTX | HINT0RX |
| 0.457 | | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R |
| 0x1E7 | HINTR | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | ŀ | Hub Interru | pt Event E | nable Cont | rol Registe | r | |
| | | Bit Name | HPSTSONTE | SOFINTE | EOF2INTE | EOF1NTE | HINT1E | HINTONE | HINTOTXE | HINTORXE |
| 0x1E8 | HINTE | Read/Write (R/W) | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| UXIEO | | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | Hub Address Register | | | | | | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | HADDR6 | HADDR5 | HADDR4 | HADDR3 | HADDR2 | HADDR1 | HADDR0 |
| 0x1E9 | HAR | Read/Write (R/W) | - | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| UXIE9 | NAK | Power-on | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | Hub Ei | ndpoint0 R | X Token R | egister | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | - | - | - | - | HSETUPOW | HSETUP | HOUT |
| 0.454 | | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | - | - | - | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0x1EA | HEPORXTR | Power-on | - | - | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | - | - | - | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | Н | ub Endpoir | nt0 RX Cor | mmand/Sta | tus Registe | er | |
| | | Bit Name | HODTOGORX | HERRSTSORX | HSTALLSTSTRX | HACKSTSORX | HDTCGERRIPX | HDTOGORX | HEESTALLORX | HRXENORX |
| | HEP0RXC | Read/Write (R/W) | W | R | R | R | R | R | R/W | R/W |
| 0x1EB | SR | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |



| Addr | Name | Reset Type | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-----------|------------------|-----------|-------------|--------------|------------|-----------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| | | Full Name | | F | lub Endpoi | nt0 TX Cor | nmand/Sta | tus Registe | er | |
| | | Bit Name | HODTOGOTX | HERRSTSOTX | HSTALLSTSOTX | HACKSTSOTX | - | HDTOGOTX | HSESTALLOTX | HIXENOTX |
| 0x1EC | HEPOTXCSR | Read/Write (R/W) | W | R | R | R | - | R | R/W | R/W |
| UXIEC | HENIALSK | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | - | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | - | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | - | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | F | lub Endpoi | nt1 TX Cor | nmand/Sta | tus Registe | er | |
| | | Bit Name | HODTOGITX | HERRESISTIX | HSTALLSTSTTX | HACKSTSTIX | - | HOTOGITX | HSESTALLITX | HIXENITX |
| 0x1ED | HEPITXCSR | Read/Write (R/W) | W | R | R | R | - | R | R/W | R/W |
| | | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | - | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | - | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | - | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | Hub E | ndpoint0 F | X Count re | egister | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | - | - | - | HEP0RX C3 | HEP0RX C2 | HEP0RX C1 | HEP0RX C0 |
| 0.455 | | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | - | - | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0x1EE | HEPORXCTR | Power-on | - | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | | | P | P | P | P |
| | | Full Name | | | Hub E | ndpoint0 T | ' X Count re | - | | • |
| | | Bit Name | - | - | - | - | HEPOTXC3 | HEPOTXC2 | HEPOTXC1 | HEPOTXCO |
| | | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | | | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| 0x1EF | HEPOTXCTR | Power-on | _ | - | | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | _ | | | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | | - | | | | P | P | P | P |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | - | - | | | P | P |
| | | Full Name | | | | | X Data Re | - | | |
| | | Bit Name | HEPORXO7 | HEPORXD6 | HEPORXOS | HEPORXD4 | HEPORXCO | HEPORXD2 | HEPORXDI | HEFORXCO |
| 0x1F0 | HEPORXDAR | Read/Write (R/W) | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R |
| | | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | | • | X Data Re | 5 | | |
| | | Bit Name | HEPOTXD7 | HEPOTXD6 | HEPOTXD5 | HEPOTXD4 | HEPOTXD3 | HEPOTXD2 | HEPOTXD1 | HEPOTXDO |
| 0x1F1 | HEPOTXDAR | Read/Write (R/W) | W | W | W | W | W | W | W | W |
| | | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |



| Addr | Name | Reset Type | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |
|-------|------------------|------------------|---------------------|----------|----------|-------------|--------------|----------|----------|----------|--|
| | | Full Name | | | Hub E | Endpoint1 7 | TX Data Re | gister | | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | - | - | HSTSCP4 | HSTSCP3 | HSTSCP2 | HSTSCP1 | HSTSC | |
| 0x1F2 | HEPITXDAR | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | - | W | W | W | W | W | |
| UXIFZ | | Power-on | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | - | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | |
| | | Full Name | | | Hu | ub Port Co | ntrol Regist | ter | | | |
| | | Bit Name | CMDVLD | - | HPCON5 | HPCON4 | HPCON3 | HPADDR2 | HPADDR1 | HPADDR0 | |
| 0x1F3 | HPCONR | Read/Write (R/W) | W | - | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | |
| UXIFS | | Power-on | 0 | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Р | - | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | |
| | | Full Name | | | F | lub Port St | ate Registe | er | | | |
| | | Bit Name | DPSTATE4 | DMSTATE4 | DPSTATE3 | DMSTATE3 | DPSTATE2 | DMSTATE2 | DPSTATE1 | DMSTATE1 | |
| 0x1F4 | HPSTAR | Read/Write (R/W) | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | |
| UX1F4 | NFSTAR | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | |
| | Wake-up from Int | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | | |
| | | Full Name | Hub status Register | | | | | | | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | - | - | - | OVIC | LPSC | OVI | LPS | |
| 0x1F5 | HSR | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | - | - | R/W | R/W | R | R | |
| 0,110 | non | Power-on | - | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | |
| | - | /RESET and WDT | - | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | - | - | Р | Р | Р | Р | |
| | | Full Name | | | Hu | b Port 1 St | atus Regis | ter | | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | LSDA1 | PPWRSTA1 | PRTSTS1 | POCI1 | PSUSSTS1 | PENSTS1 | PCSTS1 | |
| 0x1F6 | HPSR1 | Read/Write (R/W) | - | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | |
| 0,110 | | Power-on | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | |
| | | Full Name | | | Hu | b Port 2 St | atus Regis | ter | | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | LSDA2 | PPWRSTA2 | PRTSTS2 | POCI2 | PSUSSTS2 | PENSTS2 | PCSTS2 | |
| 0x1F7 | HPSR2 | Read/Write (R/W) | - | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | |
| 0.117 | 111 0112 | Power-on | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | |



| Addr | Name | Reset Type | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|---------|-----------|------------------|-----------------------------------|-------|----------|--------------|------------|-----------|----------|---------|
| | | Full Name | | | Hu | b Port 3 St | atus Regis | ter | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | LSDA3 | PPWRSTA3 | PRTSTS3 | POCI3 | PSUSSTS3 | PENSTS3 | PCSTS3 |
| 0.450 | | Read/Write (R/W) | - | R | R | R | R | R | R | R |
| 0x1F8 | HPSR3 | Power-on | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | ì | /RESET and WDT | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | ì | Wake-up from Int | - | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | Hu | b Port 4 St | atus Regis | ter | | |
| | ì | Bit Name | - | LSDA4 | PPWRSTA4 | PRTSTS4 | POCI4 | PSUSSTS4 | PENSTS4 | PCSTS4 |
| 0x1F9 | HPSR4 | Read/Write (R/W) | - | R | R | R | R | R | R | R |
| UXIF9 | NP3R4 | Power-on | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | · · · · · | /RESET and WDT | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | ì | Wake-up from Int | - | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | Hub Po | ort 1 Status | Change R | legister | | |
| | ì | Bit Name | - | - | - | PRTSTSC1 | POCIC1 | PSUSSTSC1 | PENSTSC1 | PCSTSC1 |
| 0x1FA | HPSCR1 | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | - | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| UXIFA | RESCRI | Power-on | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | - | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | Hub Port 2 Status Change Register | | | | | | | |
| | ì | Bit Name | - | - | - | PRTSTSC2 | POCIC2 | PSUSSTSC2 | PENSTSC2 | PCSTSC2 |
| 0x1FB | HPSCR2 | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | - | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| UX II D | TIF SCR2 | Power-on | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | - | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | Hub Po | ort 3 Status | change R | egister | | |
| | ì | Bit Name | - | - | - | PRISTSC3 | POCIC3 | PSUSSTSC3 | PENSTSC3 | PCSTSC3 |
| 0x1FC | HPSCR3 | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | - | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| UXIFC | HF3CK3 | Power-on | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | - | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |
| | | Full Name | | | Hub Po | ort 4 Status | s change R | egister | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | - | - | PRTSTSC4 | POCIC4 | PSUSSTSC4 | PENSTSC4 | PCSTSC4 |
| 0x1FD | HPSCR4 | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | - | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W | R/W |
| UNIFU | | Power-on | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | - | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р |



| Addr | Name | Reset Type | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | |
|-------|-------|------------------|-------|--|----------|--------------|------------|--------|-------|-------|--|
| | | Full Name | | Least Significant Byte of Frame Number | | | | | | | |
| | | Bit Name | FN7 | FN6 | FN5 | FN4 | FN3 | FN2 | FN1 | FN0 | |
| 0x1FE | FNLR | Read/Write (R/W) | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | R | |
| | TINER | Power-on | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | 0 | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | Ρ | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | Р | |
| | | Full Name | | | Most Sig | nificant Byt | e of Frame | Number | | | |
| | | Bit Name | - | - | - | - | - | FNA | FN9 | FN8 | |
| 0x1FF | FNHR | Read/Write (R/W) | - | - | - | - | - | R | R | R | |
| UXIFF | FINER | Power-on | - | - | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | |
| | | /RESET and WDT | - | - | - | - | - | 0 | 0 | 0 | |
| | | Wake-up from Int | - | - | - | - | - | Р | Р | Р | |

7 Function Description

7.1 Special Purpose Registers

The special purpose registers are function-oriented registers used by the CPU to access memory, record execution results, and carry out the desired operation. The functions of the registers related to the core are described in the following subsections.

7.1.1 Accumulator – ACC

Internal data transfer operation, or instruction operand holding usually involves the temporary storage function of the Accumulator, which is not an addressable register.

7.1.2 Indirect Addressing Contents – IAC0 (0x00), and IAC1 (0x09)

The contents of R0 and R9 are implemented as indirect addressing pointers if any instruction uses R6 and R8 as registers.

7.1.3 High byte Program Counter HPC (0x01) and Low byte Program Counter LPC (0x02)

- The Program Counter (PC) is composed of registers HPC and LPC.
- The PC and the hardware stacks are 14 bits wide.
- The structure is depicted in Fig. 5-1
- Generates 16K×16 on-chip ROM addresses to the corresponding program memory (ROM).
- All the bits of the PC are set to "0"s as a reset condition occurs.
- "RET" ("RETL k", "RETI") instruction loads the program counter with the contents at the top of the stack.



- "MOV R2, A" allows the loading of an address from the "A" register to the lower 8 bits of the PC, and the high byte (A8~A14) of the PC remain unchanged.
- "ADD R2, A" & "TBL" allows a corresponding address/offset be added to the current PC.

7.1.4 Status Register – SR (0x03)

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| - | - | RST | Т | Р | Z | DC | С |

- **Bit 0 (C):** Carry flag. This bit indicates that a carry out of ALU occurred during the last arithmetic operation. This bit is also affected during bit test, branch instruction and during bit shifts.
- **Bit 1 (DC):** Auxiliary carry flag. This bit is set during ADD and ADC operations to indicate that a carry occurred between Bit 3 and Bit 4.
- Bit 2 (Z): Zero flag. Set to "1" if the result of the last arithmetic, data or logic operation is zero.
- **Bit 3 (P):** Power down bit. Set to 1 during power on or by a "WDTC" command and reset to 0 by a "SLEP" command.
- Bit 4 (T): Time-out bit. Set to 1 by the "SLEP" command and the "WDTC" command, or

during power up and reset to 0 by WDT timeout.

Bit 5 (RST): Set if the CPU wakes up by keying on the wake-up pins. Reset if the chip wakes up through other ways.

Bits 6 and 7 are reserved.

7.1.5 RAM Bank Selector – RAMBS0 (0x04), and RAMBS1 (0x07)

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|---------|---------|---------|
| - | - | - | - | - | RAMBSX2 | RAMBSX1 | RAMBSX0 |

As depicted in Fig. 5-2, there are seven available banks in the MCU. Each of them has 128 registers and can be accessed by defining the bits, RAMBSX0 ~ RAMBSX2, as shown below.

| RAMBSX (0x04/0x07) | Bank |
|--------------------|------|
| 000 | 0 |
| 001 | 1 |
| 010 | 2 |
| 011 | 3 |
| 100 | 4 |
| 101 | 5 |
| 110 | 6 |



| 7.1.6 R | OM Page | e Selecto | or – ROM | PS (0x0 | 5) | |
|---------|---------|-----------|----------|---------|-------|-------|
| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit / | Dit 2 | Bit 2 | Dit 1 |

| RPS | 0 |
|---------|---|

As depicted in Fig. 6-1, there are two available pages in the MCU. Each of them has $8K \times 16$ ROM size and can be accessed by defining the bits, RPS0, as shown below.

| RPS0 | Page (Address) |
|------|-------------------|
| 0 | 0 (0x0000~0x1FFF) |
| 1 | 1 (0x2000~0x3FFF) |

7.1.7 Indirect Addressing Pointers – IAP0 (0x06), and IAP1 (0x08)

Both R6 and R8 are not physically implemented registers. They are useful as indirect addressing pointers. Any instruction using R6/R4 and R8/R7 as registers actually access data pointed by R0 and R9 individually.

7.1.8 Indirect Address Pointer Direction Control Register – IAPDR (0x0A)

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|--------|----------|----------|
| - | - | - | - | IAP1_D | IAP0_D | IAP1_D_E | IAP0_D_E |

Bit 0/1 (IAP0_D_E/IAP1_D_E) Indirect addressing Pointer 0/1 direction function enable bit.

- 0: Disable
- 1: Enable

Bit 2/3 (IAP0_D/IAP1_D) Indirect addressing Pointer 0/1 direction control bit.

- 0: Minus direction
- 1: Plus direction

7.1.9 Pointer of Table Look-up – LTBL (0x0B), and HTBL (0x0C)

The maximum length of a table is 64K, and can be accessed through registers LTBL and HTBL. HTBL is the high byte of the pointer, whereas LTBL is the low byte.

7.1.10 Stack Pointer – STKPTR (0x0D)

Register RD indicates how many stacks the current free run program uses. It is a read only register.

7.1.11 Repeat Counter – RPTC (0x0E)

RE register is used to set how many times that the "RPT" instruction is going to read the table.



7.1.12 Prescaler Counter – PRC (0x0F)

Prescaler counter for TCC.

7.1.13 Real Time Clock Counter – RTCC (0x10)

TCC counter.

7.1.14 Interrupt Flag Register – INTF (0x11)

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|
| ADIF | RBFIF | PWM1IF | PWM0IF | EINT1F | EINT0F | TCCOF | FRCOF |

- **Bit 0 (FRCOF):** FRC Overflow interrupt. Set as the contents of the FRC counter change from 0xFFFF to 0x0000, reset by software.
- **Bit 1 (TCCOF):** TCC Overflow interrupt. Set as the contents of the TCC counter change from 0xFF to 0x00, reset by software.
- Bits 2 ~ 3 (EINTOF & EINTIF): External input pin interrupt flag. Interrupt occurs at the defined edge of the external input pin, reset by software.
- Bits 4 ~ 5 (PWM0IF & PWM1IF): PWM interrupt flag. Interrupt occurs when TMRX is equal to PRDX, reset by software.
- **Bit 6 (RBFIF):** SPI receiving buffer full Interrupt flag. Interrupt occurs when an 8-bit data received, reset by software.
- Bit 7 (ADIF): ADC conversion complete interrupt flag.

Each bit can function independently regardless whether its related interrupt mask bit is enabled or not.

7.1.15 Key Wake-up Flag Register – KWUAIF (0x12) & KWUBIF (0x13)

KWUAIF: Port A Key Wake-up Interrupt Flag

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| - | - | - | - | KWUBIF | KWUAIF | KWU9IF | KWU8IF |

KWUBIF: Port B Key Wake-up Interrupt Flag

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| KWU7IF | KWU6IF | KWU5IF | KWU4IF | KWU3IF | KWU2IF | KWU1IF | KWU0IF |

7.1.16 I/O Port Registers – PTA ~ PTF (0x14 ~ 0x19)

PTX can be operated as any other general purpose registers by related instructions. That is, PTX is an 8-bit, bidirectional, general purpose port. Its corresponding I/O control bit determines the data direction of a PTX pin.



7.1.17 16-bit Free Run Counter (FRC) – LFRC (0x1A), HFRC (0x1B) & LFRCB (0x1C)

R1A is a 16-bit FRC low byte; R1B is high byte; R1C is a low byte buffer.

7.1.18 Serial Peripheral Interface Read Register – SPIRB (0x1D)

Register R1D indicates an SPI receive data.

7.1.19 Serial Peripheral Interface Write Register – SPIWB (0x1E)

Register R1E indicates an SPI transmit data.

7.1.20 Converting Value of ADC – ADDATAH (0x1F) & ADDATAL (0x20)

ADDATAH: MSB Converting Value of ADC.

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| ADD9 | ADD8 | ADD7 | ADD6 | ADD5 | ADD4 | ADD3 | ADD2 |

ADDATAL: LSB Converting Value of ADC.

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| ADD1 | ADD0 | - | - | - | - | - | - |

7.1.21 PWM Duty – DT0L (0x21)/DT0H (0x22) & DT1L (0x27)/DT1H (0x28)

R22:R21 16-bit PWM0 output duty cycle. R28:R27 16-bit PWM1 output duty cycle.

7.1.22 PWM Period – PRD0L (0x23)/PRD0H (0x24) & PRD1L (0x29)/PRD1H (0x2A)

R24:R23 16-bit PWM0 output period cycle. R2A:R29 16-bit PWM1 output period cycle.

7.1.23 PWM Duty Latch – DL0L (0x25)/DL0H (0x26) & DL1L (0x2B)/DL1H (0x2C)

R26:R25 16-bit PWM0 output duty cycle buffer. R2C:R2B 16-bit PWM1 output duty cycle buffer.

7.1.24 BB Address Register – RFAAR (0x2D)

Register R2D indicates WM indirect RAM address.

7.1.25 BB Data Buffer Register – RFDB (0x2E)

Register R2E indicates WM indirect RAM data.



7.1.26 BB Data Read/Write Control Register – RFACR (0x2F)

Register R2F indicates WM RAM access control.

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| - | - | - | - | - | RRST | RFRD | RFWR |

Bit 0 (RFWR): Write BB register

Bit 1 (RFRD): Read BB register

Bit 2 (RRST): BB S/W reset

Bit 3 ~ Bit 7 reserved

7.1.27 BB Interrupt Flag Register – RFINTF (0x30)

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|--------|--------|-----------|--------|-----------|-----------|----------|
| CSDF | TX_AEF | RX_AFF | TX_EMPTYF | RX_OFF | LINK_DISF | LOCK_OUTF | LOCK_INF |

Bit 0 (LOCK_INF): This bit reflects the LOCK IN flag interrupt.

Bit 1 (LOCK_OUTF): This bit reflects the LOCK OUT flag interrupt.

- **Bit 2 (LINK_DISF):** This interrupt is invoked by the zero counter capacitor discharge mechanism.
- Bit 3 (RX_OFF): This bit reflects the RX FIFO full flag interrupt.

Bit 4 (TX_EMPTYF): This bit reflects the TX EMPTY flag interrupt.

Bit 5 (RX_AFF): This bit reflects the RX FIFO almost full flag interrupt.

Bit 6 (TX_AEF): This bit reflects the TX FIFO almost empty flag interrupt.

Bit 7 (CSDF): This flag indicates that a carrier-sense interrupt has occurred.

7.2 Dual Port Register (0x40 ~ 0x7F)

R 40 ~ R7F are dual port registers.

7.3 System Status, Control and Configuration Registers

These registers are function-oriented registers used by the CPU to record, enable or disable the peripheral modules, interrupts, and the operation clock modes.

7.3.1 Peripherals Enable Control – PRIE (0x80)

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| SPIE | USBE | BBE | ADE | PWM1E | PWM0E | TCCE | FRCE |

Bit 0 (FRCE): Free Run Counter 0 (FRC0) Enable bit.



Bit 1 (TCCE): Timer Clock/Counter (TCC) Enable bit.

- Bit 2 (PWM0E): PWM0 function enable bit.
- Bit 3 (PWM1E): PWM1 function Enable bit.
- Bit 4 (ADE): ADC Enable bit.
- Bit 5 (BBE): Base band (BB) Enable bit.
- Bit 6 (USBE): Universal Serial Bus (USB) Enable bit.
- Bit 7 (SPIE): Serial Peripheral Interface Enable bit.
 - 0: disable function
 - 1: enable function

7.3.2 Interrupts Enable Control – INTE (0x81)

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|
| GIE | RBFIE | PWM1IE | PWM0IE | EINT1E | EINT0E | TCCOE | FRCOE |

Bit 0 (FRC0OE): Free Run Counter (FRC) Overflow interrupt enable bit.

Bit 1 (TCCOE): TCC (TCC) Overflow interrupt enable bit.

Bit 2 (EINT0E): External pin (EINT0) interrupt enable bit.

Bit 3 (EINT1E): External pin (EINT1) interrupt enable bit.

Bits 4 (PWM0IE): PWM0 period complete enable bit.

Bits 5 (PWM1IE): PWM1 period complete enable bit.

Bit 6 (RBFIE): SPI Read Buffer Full (EINT) interrupt enable bit.

- 0: disable function interrupt
- 1: enable function interrupt

Bit 7 (GIE): Global interrupt control bit. Global interrupt is enabled by the ENI and

RETI

instructions and is disabled by the DISI instruction.

0: Global interrupt disable

1: Global interrupt enable

7.3.3 Key Wake-up Enable Control – KWUAIE (0x82) & KWUBIE (0x83)

KWUAIE: Port A Key wake-up Interrupt Enable Control Register

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| - | - | - | - | KWUBE | KWUAE | KWU9E | KWU8E |

Bit 0 ~Bit 3 (KWU8E ~ KWUBE): Enable or disable the PTA0 ~ PTA3 Key Wake-up

function.

- 0: disable key wake-up function
- 1: enable key wake-up function



KWUBIE: Port B Key Wake-up Interrupt Enable Control Register

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| KWU7E | KWU6E | KWU5E | KWU4E | KWU3E | KWU2E | KWU1E | KWU0E |

Bit 0 ~Bit 7 (KWU0 ~ KWU7): Enable or disable the PTB0 ~ PTB7 Key Wake-up

function.

0: disable key wake-up function

1: enable key wake-up function

7.3.4 External Interrupts Edge Control – EINTED (0x84)

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|---------|---------|
| - | - | - | - | - | - | EINT1ED | EINT0ED |

Bit 0 (EINT0ED): Define which edge as an interrupt source for EINT0.

Bit 1 (EINT1ED): Define which edge as an interrupt source for EINT1.

0: Falling Edge

1: Rising Edge

Bit 2 ~ Bit 7 reserved

7.3.5 Serial Peripheral Serial (SPI) Enable Control Register – SPIC (0x85)

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|---------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| SPI_RBF | CES | SBR2 | SBR1 | SBR0 | SDID | SDOD | SPIS |

Bit 0 (SPIS): SPI start

Bit 1 (SDOD): SPI data shift out direction

0: Most significant bit (MSB) transmitted first

- 1: Least significant bit (LSB) transmitted first
- Bit 2 (SDID): SPI data shift in direction.
 - 0: Most significant bit (MSB) received first
 - 1: Least significant bit (LSB) received first

Bits 3 ~ 5 (SBR0 ~ SBR2): Configure the transmission mode and the clock rate.

| SBR2 (Bit5) | SBR1 (Bit4) | SBR0 (Bit3) | Mode | Baud Rate |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|--------|-----------|
| 0 | 0 | 0 | Master | Fosc/2 |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | Master | Fosc/4 |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | Master | Fosc/8 |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | Master | Fosc/16 |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | Master | Fosc/32 |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | Slave | N/A |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | N/A | N/A |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | N/A | N/A |



Bit 6 (CES): Clock edge select bit.

- **0**: Data shifts out on a rising edge, and shifts in on a falling edge. Data is on hold during the low level edge.
- 1: Data shifts out on falling edge, and shifts in on rising edge. Data is on hold during the high level edge.

Bit 7 (SPI_RBF): SPI read buffer full flag.

7.3.6 I/O Control Registers – IOCA~IOCF (0x86~0x8B)

OCX is used to determine the data direction of its corresponding I/O port bit.

0: configure a selected I/O pin as output

1: configure a selected I/O pin as input

The only four least significant bits of Port F, and the only five least significant bits of port C are available.

7.3.7 Pull Up Resistance Control Registers for Ports A~F – PUCA~PUCF (0x8C ~ 0x91)

Each bit of PUCX is used to control the pull-up resistors attached to its corresponding pin respectively. The theoretical value of the resistor is 64 K Ω . However, due to processes, ±35% variation in resistance must be taken into consideration.

PUCX:

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| PUCX7 | PUCX6 | PUCX5 | PUCX4 | PUCX3 | PUCX2 | PUCX1 | PUCX0 |

0: Pull-up Resistors disconnected

1: Pull-up Resistors attached

7.3.8 Open Drain Control Registers of Port B – ODCB (0x92)

ODCB: Open drain control of Port B.

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| OPCB7 | OPCB6 | OPCB5 | OPCB4 | OPCB3 | OPCB2 | OPCB1 | OPCB0 |

0: Open drain disabled

1: Open drain enabled

7.3.9 Timer Clock Counter Controller – TCCC (0x93)

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| - | - | - | - | TCCS0 | PSR2 | PSR1 | PSR0 |



Bit 0 ~ 2 (PSR0 ~ PSR2): Prescaler for TCC.

| PSR2 | PSR1 | PSR0 | Clock Rate |
|------|------|------|------------|
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 1:2 |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 1:4 |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 1:8 |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 1:16 |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 1:32 |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 1:64 |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 1:128 |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 1:256 |

Bit 3 (TCCS0): Clock Source Select.

| TCCS0 | Clock Source |
|-------|---------------------------|
| 0 | Selected PLL Clock Source |
| 1 | Selected ERC Clock Source |

Bits 4 ~ 7 are reserved.

7.3.10 Free Run Counter Controller – FRCC (0x94)

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| - | - | - | - | - | - | - | FRCCS |

Bit 0 (FRCCS): Clock Source Select

| FRCCS | Clock Source |
|-------|---------------------------|
| 0 | Selected PLL Clock Source |
| 1 | Selected ERC Clock Source |

Bits 1 ~ 7 are reserved.

7.3.11 Watchdog Timer Controller – WDTC (0x95)

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| GREEN | - | - | WDTCE | - | RAT2 | RAT1 | RAT0 |

Bit 0 ~ 2 (RAT0 ~ RAT2): WDT Prescaler

| RAT2 | RAT1 | RAT0 | Clock Rate |
|------|------|------|------------|
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 1:2 |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 1:4 |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 1:8 |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 1:16 |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 1:32 |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 1:64 |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 1:128 |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 1:256 |

Bit 4 (WDTCE): Enable the WDT Counter

0: WDT disabled

1: WDT enabled



- Bits 7 (Green): for power saving purposes, the system clock can be changed to external RC mode.
 - 0: Normal Mode
 - 1: Green Mode

Bits 3, 5 and 6 are reserved.

7.3.12 ADC analog Input Pin Select – ADCAIS (0x96)

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| - | - | - | IMS2 | IMS1 | IMS0 | CKR1 | CKR0 |

CKR0 ~ CKR2 (Bit 0 ~ Bit 2): AD conversion Rate control bits.

IMS2~IMS0 (Bit 2 ~ Bit 4): ADC configuration defined bit.

Bits 5 ~ 7 are reserved.

7.3.13 ADC Configuration Register – ADCCR (0x97)

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| ADRUN | ADIE | - | - | AIPS3 | AIPS2 | AIPS1 | AIPS0 |

Bit 0 ~ Bit3 (AIPS0~AIPS3): Analog Input Select.

Bit 6 ~ Bit 7 (ADIE): ADC interrupt enable.

0 = ADC interrupt disable

1 = ADC interrupt enable

Bit 7 (ADRUN): ADC starts to RUN

0 = reset on completion of the conversion; this bit cannot be reset by software.

1 = an A/D conversion is started; this bit can be set by software.

Bits 4 and 5 are reserved.

7.3.14 PWM Control Register – PWMCR (0x98)

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|--------|-------|-------|
| - | - | - | - | S_PWM1 | S_PWM0 | - | - |

Bit 2 (S_PWM0): Selected PWM0 output enable.

Bit 3 (S_PWM1): Selected PWM1 output enable.

0 = disable PWM output

1 = enable PWM output

Bits 0, 1 and 4 ~ 7 are reserved.



7.3.15 BB Interrupt Control Register – RFINTE (0x99)

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|--------|--------|-----------|--------|-----------|-----------|----------|
| CSDE | TX_AEE | RX_AFE | TX_EMPTYE | RX_OFE | LINK_DISE | LOCK_OUTE | LOCK_INE |

Bit 0 (LOCK_INE): LOCK IN interrupt enable bit.

Bit 1 (LOCK_OUTE): LOCK OUT interrupt enable bit.

Bit 2 (LINK_DISE): LINK_DIS interrupt enable bit.

Bit 3 (RX_OFE): The RX FIFO full interrupt enable bit.

Bit 4 (TX_EMPTYE): The TX EMPTY interrupt enable bit.

Bit 5 (RX_AFE): The RX FIFO almost full interrupt enable bit.

Bit 6 (TX_AEE): The TX FIFO almost empty interrupt enable bit.

Bit 7 (CSDE): The carrier-sense interrupt enable bit.

- **0** = disable function interrupt
- **1** = enable function interrupt

7.4 USB Status, Control and Configuration Registers

These registers are function-oriented registers used by the USB to record, enable or disable the peripheral modules, interrupts, and the operation clock modes. Refer to Section 8.5.

7.5 Code Option (ROM-0x3FFF)

Register SCLK is located on the very last bit of EM77F900's 16K program ROM. These values will be fetched first to be the system initial values during power-on.

| SCLKC | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|--------|-------|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|
| 0x3FFF | - | - | - | USBCLK | RFCLK1 | RFCLK0 | SCLK1 | SCLK0 |

SCLKC: System Clock Control Register

| SCLKC | Bit 15 | Bit 14 | Bit 13 | Bit 12 | Bit 11 | Bit 10 | Bit 9 | Bit 8 |
|--------|--------|---------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|
| 0x3FFF | - | PROTECT | - | - | - | - | - | - |

Bit 1 ~ Bit 2 (SCLKS1 ~ SCLKS0): System Clock Frequency Select Control Bits

| SCLK1 | SCLK0 | System Clock (MHz) |
|-------|-------|--------------------|
| 0 | 0 | 6 |
| 0 | 1 | 12 |
| 1 | 0 | 24 |
| 1 | 1 | 48 |



Bit 3 ~ Bit 4 (RFCK1 ~ RFCK0): Wireless Modem Clock Frequency Select Control Bits

| RFCLK1 | RFCLK0 | System Clock (MHz) |
|--------|--------|--------------------|
| 0 | 0 | 6 |
| 0 | 1 | 12 |
| 1 | 0 | 24 |
| 1 | 1 | 48 |

Bit 5 (USBCLK): USB / HUB 48MHz PLL Clock Source Control Bit

0: Disable 48 MHz oscillation from PLL.

1: Enable 48 MHz oscillation from PLL for USB/Hub as power-on.

Bit 14 (PROTECT): Protect bit

0: Protect

1: No protect

Bits 5 ~ 13, 15: Reserved

| SCLK [1:0] | RFCLK [1:0] | USB_CLK | WDT_CON. GREEN | SYS CLK | RF CLK | USB CLK |
|-------------|-------------|---------|-------------------|-------------|-------------|-----------|
| 00 | 00 | 0 | 0 | 6M (Bypass) | 6M (Bypass) | EXT 48MHz |
| 00/01/10/11 | 01/10/11 | 0 | 0 | 6/12/24/48 | 12/24/48 | - |
| 01/10/11 | 00/01/10/11 | 0 | 0 | 12/24/48 | 6/12/24/48 | - |
| 00/01/10/11 | 00/01/10/11 | 1 | 0 | 6/12/24/48 | 6/12/24/48 | PLL 48MHz |
| 00/01/10/11 | 00/01/10/11 | 0/1 | 1 | ERC | - | - |

8 Base Band (BB)

8.1 BB: Standard Interface to the RFW102 Series

8.1.1 Features

- Parallel interface to RFW102 modem
- Serial to Parallel conversion of RFW102 interface
- Input FIFO (RX_FIFO)
- Output FIFO (TX_FIFO)
- Preamble Correlation
- Packet Address Filter (Network and unique)
- CRC calculation
- Working Frequencies: 6-24MHz



- Power Saving modes: Idle, Power-down
- Inter-RFWAVES networks Carrier-sense.
- Discharge of the RFW-102 reference capacitor.
- Compensate for clock drifts between the transmitting EM77F900 and the receiving EM77F900 up to 1000ppm. Hence, the EM77F900 requires low performance crystal.
- Interrupt Driver connected to the EM77F900's internal interrupt and informs the EM77F900 about BB events.

8.1.2 Description

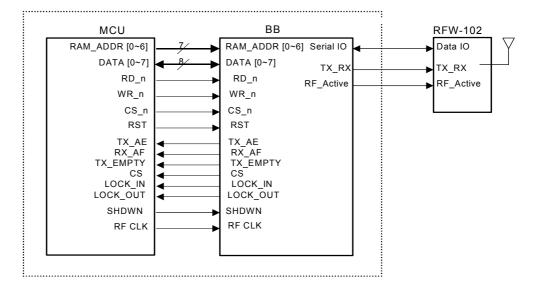
RFWAVES has developed a very low cost wireless modem (RFW102) for short range, cost-sensitive applications. The modem is a physical layer element (PHY) – allowing the transmission and reception of bits from one end to the other.

In an RFWAVES application, the MCU is in charge of the MAC layer protocol. In order to reduce the real-time demands of the MCU handling the MAC protocol, the BB was developed. The BB enables the MCU an easy interface to RFW102 through a parallel interface, similar to memory access. It converts the fast serial input to 8-bits words, which are much easier for an 8-bit MCU to work with and requires a lower rate oscillator. It buffers the input through a TBD bytes FIFO, enabling the MCU to access the BB more efficiently. Instead of reading one byte per interrupt, the MCU can read up to 16 bytes in each interrupt. This reduces the MCU overhead in reading incoming words, insofar as stack stuffing and pipeline emptying are concerned, in cases where each incoming byte causes an interrupt. When using the FIFO, the MCU pays the same overhead for all the FIFO bytes as it paid for only one byte without a FIFO.

Having a low-cost BB with a built-in state machine that can support basic wireless communication elements would present the following advantages:

- Shorter development time, hence shorter and more efficient time-to-market solution.
- Save CPU power and other resources for other applications.
- Offer an easy, standard integrated solution.





8.1.3 I/O and Package Description

| Name | Туре | Description |
|---|------|---|
| DATA [0-7] | I/O | This bus comprises of eight TRI-STATE input/output lines. The bus provides bidirectional communication between the system and the MCU. Data, control words, and status information are transferred via the DATA [0-7] data bus. |
| RD_n | I | When RD_n is low while the system is enabled, BB outputs one of its internal register values to DATA[0-7] according to RAM_ADDR[0-6]. |
| WR_n | I | When WR_n is low while the system is enabled, BB enables writing to its internal registers. The register is determined by RAM_ADDR [0-6] and the value DATA[0-7]. |
| RAM_ADDR[0-6] | I | These four input signals determine the register to which the MCU writes to or reads from. |
| CS_n | I | Chip select input pin. When CS_n is low, the chip is selected; when high, the chip is disabled. This pin overrides all pins excluding RST. This enables communication between BB and the MCU. This pin functions as wake-up pin for power-down and idle modes. |
| TX_AE TX_EMPTY RX_AF CS LOCK_IN LOCK_OUT | 0 | Interrupt driver pins. This pin goes high whenever any of the interrupt sources has an active high condition and is enabled via the IER. The purpose of this pin is to notify the MCU through its external interrupt pin that an event (such as empty TX_FIFO) has occurred. Goes low when IER register is read. |



| Name | Туре | Description |
|-----------|------|--|
| RST | I | Chip's reset pin. When this pin is set high, all registers and FIFOs are cleared to their initial values. All transceiver traffic is disabled and aborted. Reset is asynchronous to system clock. After power-up, a pulse in RST input should be applied (by POR). |
| SHDWN | I | Shut Down BB |
| RF_ACTIVE | 0 | This output pin controls the RFW102 working/shutdown mode. It's values is determined by SCR4(1). |
| SERIAL_IO | I/O | Serial input or output according to TX_RX mode. It functions as serial interface for the RFW-102 (RFWAVES modem). When SERIAL_IO is input, it is a Schmitt-trigger input. |
| RX_TX | 0 | This pin controls the RFW-102 operation mode. It should be connected to RFW-102 RX_TX input pin. When RX_TX is low, RFW-102 is in receiving mode. When RX_TX is high, RFW-102 is in transmitting mode. In most cases RX_TX output pin is determined by SCR2(0) register. SCR3(7) and the capacitor discharge mechanism effect this pin. |
| RF_CLK | I | Clock for RF operation |



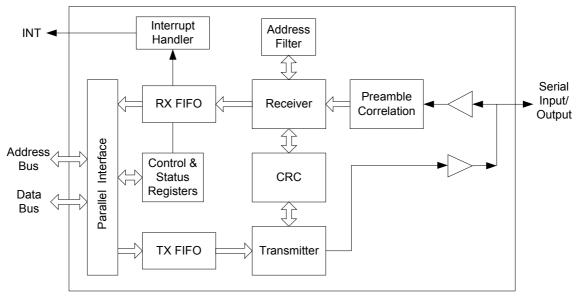


Fig. 7-1 BB Block Diagram



8.2 BB Description

8.2.1 Reset

A reset is achieved by holding the RST pin high for at least TBD oscillator cycles.

To ensure a good power-up, a reset should be given to BB after power-up.

8.2.2 Power Saving Modes

The BB was designed to work in similar working modes as a typical MCU.

These modes enable the system to save power when the BB is not in use.

8.2.2.1 Power-Down Mode

The MCU is able to halt all activity in BB by stopping its clock. This enables the MCU to reduce the power consumption of the BB to a minimum.

All registers and FIFOs retain their values when BB is in power-down mode.

BB enters power-down mode by setting bit TBD in register TBD to "1". This bit is set by MCU and cleared by BB.

BB goes back to working mode by setting CS_n input pin to "0" for TBD msec.

The wake-up time of the BB from power-down mode to fully operating mode is TBD msec.

Since BB retains all the register values in power-down mode, special care should be given to the register values before it enters power-down. For example, the MCU should check that the BB is not in the middle of transmitting or receiving a packet.

The RFACTIVE should be set low to shutdown the RFW-102, before entering power-down mode.

8.2.2.2 Idle Mode

In idle mode, the BB internally blocks the clock input. The external clock is not stopped, but it is not routed to the internal logic. By doing this, the MCU achieves substantial power savings and yet the wake-up time is still relatively short. The power consumption is not minimal since the external clock is still active.

All registers and FIFOs retain their values when BB is in idle mode.

BB enters idle mode by setting bit TBD in register TBD to "1". This bit is set by MCU and cleared by BB.

BB goes back to working mode by setting CS_n input pin to "0" for TBD $\mu sec.$

Since BB retains all the register values in idle mode, special care should be given to the register values before BB enters idle mode. For example, the MCU should check that the BB is not in the middle of transmitting or receiving a packet. In addition, the RFACTIVE should be set low to shutdown the RFW-102.



8.2.3 Preamble Correlation

The transmitting BB sends the PREAMBLE in order to synchronize the receiver to its transmission. BB transmits a fixed size PREAMBLE of 16 bits. The received PREAMBLE has a variable length of 16⇔9 bits, determined by SCR2 [5:7]. The receiver correlates the 16⇔9 bits from its PRE-L and PRE-H registers to the 16⇔9 bits in its input shift-register. If a correlation was found, then BB receiver state machine is enabled.

The purpose of the PREAMBLE is to filter the module packets from white noise or other transmissions on the channel. NODE_ID and NET_ID filter are used to filter packets from other module networks.

The PREAMBLE is transmitted MSB to LSB (PRE-H first and then PRE-L).

The value of the PREAMBLE is determined according to PRE-L and PRE-H registers.

The BB has the same PREAMBLE when it is in transmitting mode (TX_RX=1) as when it is in receiving mode (TX_RX=0).

The value of the PRE-L and PRE-H registers should be identical in the BB in all nodes in the network.

8.2.4 Refresh Bit

When receiving a valid packet, The RFWaves modem (PHY layer) has to receive a "1" symbol each time a certain period has elapsed in order to maintain its sensitivity. The time between adjacent "1" symbols is determined by the value of the reference capacitor. This constraint is transparent to the application layer since the BB adds a "1" symbol (refresh bit) if too many "0" symbols are transmitted consecutively. On the receiver side, these additional "1" symbols (refresh bits) are removed by the BB.

This feature is transparent to the application layer. The application layer has only to initialize the maximum allowed number of consecutive x"00" bytes.

The BB has the flexibility to add a refresh bit every 1 to 7 bytes. This is configured by RB (0:2) bits in the PPR register. The value of RB (0:2) bits in PPR register determines the overhead the refresh bit has on the throughput of the link.

The refresh bit does not add substantial overhead on the bit stream, since it is only added when the number of consecutive x"00" bytes exceeds a certain value.

The data that is sent is application dependent, so the application can be adjusted in order that there will be a negligible probability of this event happening.

Typical RFWaves capacitor: C=1nF

Normal discharge current = 200nA

Each 10mV on the capacitor represents 1dB in receiving power.



$$\frac{I}{C \cdot V} = \frac{200nA}{1nF \cdot 10mV} = \frac{1dB}{50\mu \sec}$$

The capacitor is charged with each received "1" symbol.

The receiver is allowed to lose 1dB before a new "1" is to be received.

Thus, after each 50 consecutive "0" bits in 1Mbps (50 μ sec) a "1" symbol should be sent.

In this case, setting RB [0:2] in the PPR register to be 5 ("101") would be sufficient (5 bytes = 40bits).

When RB (0:2) bits are set to "000" a refresh bit is added to every transmitted byte, regardless of its content. This introduces a constant overhead of 12.5%.

8.2.5 Bit Structure

The BB uses an oscillator ranging from 6~24 MHz. In order to determine the output and input bit rate, the BB must be configured to the number of clocks consisting each bit. This gives the applicator the control over the bit rate with certain restrictions. Each bit must have at least six clock cycles.

The maximum bit rate is 1Mbps.

The minimum bit rate is 10Kbps (TBD).

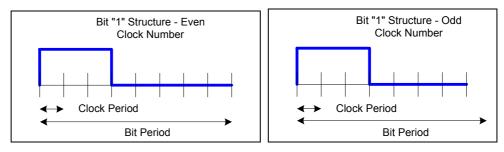
However it is recommended to work only at 1Mbps since reducing the bit rate does not change the energy of a transmitted bit. Meaning, reducing the bit-rate does not improve the bit error rate or the range between the transmitter and the receiver.

Bit Length Register (BLR) determines the number of clock cycles per bit (bit period).

BLR value is given a fixed offset of 6, since the minimum number of clock cycles in one bit is 6.

Bit Rate = Oscillator/(BLR+6).

The BB outputs (for the RFW-102) the bit structure as shown below.



In the odd number of clocks example BLR=1.

In the even number of clocks example BLR=2.



The number of clocks when the line is "1" is determined as follows:

Number of "1"s = FLOOR ((BLR+ 6)/2 - 1).

In case of "0" bit, BB output "0" value for BLR+6 clock pulses.

* FLOOR – Rounds towards zero.

8.2.6 CRC

The BB adds additional CRC information to each packet in the transmitter module, in order to enable the protocol to detect errors. The CRC is a redundant code, which is calculated and added to each packet on the transmitter side. The CRC is also calculated on the receiver side. The CRC calculation results of the receiver and the CRC field in the received packet are compared in the receiver using the CRC module in the chip. If CRC results are equal, then the receiver knows with reasonable probability that the packet was received correctly. If the CRC results are not equal then the receiver knows with probability 1 that the packet was received incorrectly.

The CRC mode is configured in the PPR (3:4) register.

Both the receiving node and the transmitting node in the network have to be in the same CRC mode.

The BB can apply CRC in three different ways:

16-Bit CRC – using polynom1+X2+X15+X16.

8-Bit CRC – using polynomial 1+X+X2+X8.

No CRC.

This gives each application the flexibility to choose the adequate amount of overhead it adds to each packet and the corresponding level of protection the CRC code has.

If CRC is enabled, then BB calculates the CRC of each incoming packet. It does not put the received CRC value in the RX_FIFO. It just puts the result of its calculation in the RX_FIFO as the last byte of the packet:

0x55 - CRC received correctly.

0xAA - CRC was received incorrectly.

The status bit SSR (0) stores the result of the last received packet.



8.2.7 RX FIFO

All received bytes are transferred to the RX_FIFO. The RX_FIFO stores the input data until the MCU reads the data from it.

CRC and PREAMBLE bytes are not transferred to the RX_FIFO.

The RX_FIFO is accessed just like all other read-only registers in the BB. The MCU cannot write to the RX_FIFO, it can only read from it.

RX_FIFO_SIZE is 16 bytes.

The purpose of having an input FIFO in BB is to reduce the real-time burden from the MCU. The FIFO is used as a buffer, which theoretically enables the MCU to read the incoming data every RX_FIFO_SIZE * 8 bit/byte * 1 μ sec = 128 μ sec, and not every 1 μ sec in the case of serial input, or every 8 μ sec in the case where there is a serial to parallel converter.

The actual buffer size for practical use is a bit smaller, since the MCU response time is taken into account.

The MCU has three ways to learn about the RX_FIFO status:

The RX FIFO Status Register (RFSR) contains the number of bytes in the RX_FIFO.

BB INT pin. If configured appropriately, the INT pin will be "1" each time RX_FIFO is almost full. This invokes an MCU interrupt if the INT pin is connected to the MCU external interrupt pin.

RX_FIFO Overflow Status Bit – bit RX_OF in SSR indicates when an overflow event has occurred. If a received byte is written to a full RX_FIFO, the last byte in the RX_FIFO is override and the RX_OF flag is raised.

The RX_AF interrupt should invoke the MCU to read from the RX_FIFO. Using the almost full event gives the MCU 32 μ sec (4 bytes \times 8 μ sec) to respond before it loses data, assuming a bit rate of 1Mbps. It uses most of the RX_FIFO size even if the response latency of the MCU is very short.

Should the MCU not respond properly to the almost full event, and an input byte is written to the RX_FIFO when it was full, then this byte would overrun the last byte in the RX_FIFO, meaning the byte that immediately preceded it.

LOCK_OUT interrupt should also trigger the MCU to read from the RX_FIFO. In case a packet has ended and the RX_AF interrupt was not invoked, the MCU should be triggered by the LOCK_OUT interrupt.



8.2.8 TX FIFO

Transmitting data is done by writing it to the TX_FIFO.

The interface to the TX_FIFO is similar to all the other write-only registers in BB.

The purpose of the TX_FIFO is to reduce the real-time transmission process from the MCU. The TX_FIFO enables the MCU, theoretically, to write to the TX_FIFO every 128µsec and not every 8µsec, as is the case with a regular 8-bit shift register.

The TX_FIFO Status Register (TFSR) indicates the number of bytes in the TX_FIFO.

The TX_FIFO can also invoke an MCU interrupt if TX_FIFO almost empty event occurs.

Almost empty flag will rise when there are only four empty bytes in the TX_FIFO.

It gives the MCU 32 μ sec response time to reload the TX_FIFO in case the transmitted packet is bigger than the TX_FIFO.

In case the MCU writes to a full TX_FIFO, then this byte overruns the last byte in the TX_FIFO, meaning the byte that was written just before it. Writing to a full TX_FIFO sets the TX_OF flag in SSR.

8.2.9 Interrupt Driver

The INT output pin is the summation of all interrupts source in the BB. Whenever an interrupt event has occurred and this interrupt is enabled (IER), the INT will go from low to high. The INT will remain high until the IIR register is read. The IIR register contains all the interrupt events that have occurred since the last read. It shows the event only for enabled interrupts. If an interrupt is disabled, even if the event that invoked this interrupt has occurred, the interrupt flag will be low. The IER register is used to enable/disable each of the interrupt. SCR4 (0) enables/disables all the interrupts.

There are eight events in the BB that can cause the INT pin to go from low to high:

- LOCK_IN This interrupt indicates that the BB has started receiving a new packet. The PREAMBLE has been identified. If the NET_ID and/or the NODE_ID are enabled, then they have been identified correctly. This event signals the beginning of an incoming packet.
- 2. LOCK OUT BB has just finished receiving a packet. This means that if the BB is in fixed packet size mode, then it has finished receiving PSR bytes not including CRC bytes. If BB is not in fixed packet size mode, then it has just finished receiving a packet of size as indicated in the packet header. Although RX_STOP and setting TX_RX=1 (SCR2) terminate the receiving of the packet, they do not cause a LOCK_OUT event, since the MCU is already aware of it (the MCU initiated it). The LOCK_OUT interrupt tells the MCU when to get data out of the RX_FIFO.
- 3. LINK_DIS This interrupt indicates that a "Zero counter" capacitor discharge event has occurred. If a consecutive number of zero bits (according to SCR3)



(4:6)) have been received, this interrupt is set, even if zero count capacitor discharge is disabled (SCR3 (3) – EN_ZERO_DIS = '0'). The actual capacitor discharge and its interrupt are two separate registers (IER (2) for the interrupt and SCR3 (3) for the discharge).

- 4. RX_OF This interrupt indicates that a byte from an incoming packet was discarded, since the RX_FIFO was already full. The receiver module tried to write a byte to a full RX_FIFO. The MCU should know that the corresponding packet is corrupted, since it is lacking at least one byte.
- 5. TX_EMPTY The BB has finished transmitting a packet. Meaning, the transmit shift register is empty and BB is now in RX mode (not TX mode).
- 6. RX_FIFO_AF RX_FIFO is almost full. If the MCU does not want the RX_FIFO to overflow, then it should empty it.
- 7. TX_FIFO_AE TX_FIFO is almost empty. If the MCU did not finish putting the transmitted packet in the TX_FIFO, then it should continue doing so now.
- 8. CS CS status line has gone from "1" to "0" invokes the CS interrupt. This signals the MCU that an unidentified (NET_ID or NODE_ID or PREAMBLE were not identified) packet has ended. If the MCU has a packet to transmit, and CS="1" then the MCU waits for this event.

All these events can be masked. If an event is masked, then even if that event occurs, it does not set the INT pin to "1". The masking is done by register IER.

The reason for masking is that in different applications or in different situation in the same application, these events have different priorities. The MCU determines which of these events will invoke an MCU interrupt.

Moreover all these events can be masked together by IE in the IER register.

If INT pin is set to "1", the MCU learns which event has occurred by reading the IIR register.

The INT goes to "0" when the MCU reads from the IIR register.

8.2.10 Packet Size

There are two types of packet structure determined by PPR[5] (Fixed).

Fixed Sized Packet – all packets have the same, fixed size. The packet size is determined in the PSR register. The packet size can be $2 \sim 255$ bytes.

Variable Sized Packet - the header of the incoming packet determines the packet size. One of the header bytes contains the packet size. Bits SIZE_LOC[0:1] in LCR register determines the location (offset) of packet size inside each incoming packet header. The BB reads the packet size byte in the packet header according to the LCR register.

In both cases the packet size does not include the CRC addition or the PREAMBLE.



8.2.11 NET_ID and NODE_ID Filters

NET_ID and NODE_ID are two filters in the receiver. They filter incoming packets according to their network address and node address.

The address field in each incoming packet is compared to NET_ID byte and NODE_ID byte. If one of the above comparisons fail, then the packet is discarded and the MCU will not be aware of it.

NET_ID and NODE_ID are both one byte. Their values are stored in NIR and BIR registers accordingly. The byte to which they are compared is set by LCR register.

Each of them can be enabled or disabled independently (PPR register).

NET_ID is targeted to be a filter on the network address. It is supposed to be common for all nodes in the network.

NODE_ID is targeted to be a filter on the specific node address. It is supposed to be unique to each node in the network.

The purpose of these filters is to save MCU power and to reduce its load. In a multi-node network, a node can filter all packets that are not sent to it, while in multi-network environment, a node can filter packets from other RFWaves networks.

In certain network a multicast ability inside the network is required. Even if NODE_ID filter is applied, Addresses '111111XX' in NODE_ID filter are preserved for multicast transmissions. NODE_ID filter will not discard those four addresses in any case.

8.2.12 Carrier-sense

Carrier-sense protocols are protocols in which a node (station) listens to the common channel before it starts transmitting. The node tries to identify other transmissions in order to avoid collision that might block its own transmission. In a wider perspective, a network that applies carrier-sense protocol utilizes the channel bandwidth more efficiently. A more efficient network enables lower power consumption to each node, shorter delay and higher probability of reaching the destination of each packet.

The BB uses one complimentary technique in order to achieve very robust carrier-sense abilities. It has an internal implementation of RFWaves Network Carrier-Sense algorithm. This enables it to avoid collision with other RFWaves stations on its network or from other networks in the area.

While the Carrier-Sense status bit in SSR (CS) tells the MCU when not to transmit, the two interrupt CS and LINK_DIS gives the MCU a flag when to transmit. LINK_DIS will be invoked whenever any transmission has ended, while CS interrupt will be invoked only when an RFWaves transmission has ended. Some applications can use some of the above mechanisms though not all of them – according to its needs.



8.2.12.1 RFWaves Carrier-Sense Algorithm

Assuming our bit rate is 1Mbps. According to the described bit structure (Section 7.2.5 Bit Structure), the time difference between two rising on DATA IO must be an integer number of 1µsec. If we take into account the frequency deviation between the two BB oscillators, the time difference between two rising edges is 1μ sec± \wedge . The \wedge depends on the frequency deviation between the two BB oscillators. The BB uses this quality in its carrier-sense algorithm. If an N (N = (CSR (0:3)*2)+2) number of "1" bits, where each is preceded by at least one "0" bit, are received with time difference of an integer number of 1µsec between two consecutive "1" bits, then the CS flag in SSR equals '1'. Basically, the BB counts "0" to "1" transits on DATA IO input, where the time difference between two transits should be an integer number (≥ 2) to 1µsec. The number of consecutive "1" bits that conforms to this rule is counted in the following example (Figure 7-2) in ONE CNT counter. ONE CNT is incremented only if a "1" bit that comes after a "0" bit is received, where the time gap between the "1" bit and the preceding "1" bit is as mentioned above. If the time difference between two consecutive "1" bits is out of the allowed deviation, the ONE CNT is reset. ONE CNT is also reset if the number of consecutive "0" exceeds (CSR (4:7)*2)+2, where CSR is the last "1" bit received is counted in ZERO CNT. ZERO CNT is reset each time "1" bit is received.

Both M and N values are determined in CSR register (CSR (7:4) and CSR (3:0) accordingly).

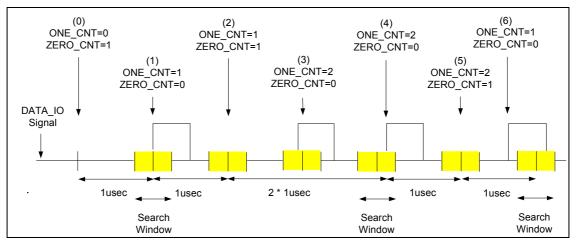


Fig. 8-2 Carrier-Sense Example

In the example shown in Figure 8-2, at time (1) a new "1" bit is received after a "0" bit was received. Thus, ONE_CNT equals 1 and ZERO_CNT is reset to 0. At time (2), a zero bit is received, so the ZERO_CNT is incremented. At time (3), a "1" is received after a "0" bit that was received before it. Thus ONE_CNT is incremented and ZERO_CNT is reset. At time (4) a "1" bit is received after a "1" bit, thus, there is no change in any counter. At time (6) a "1" bit is received out of the allowed window, so ONE_CNT is reset to 1.



The CSR register is used to configure the carrier-sense algorithm sensitivity. The CSR register determines the number of "1" bits that are required in order to decide that a carrier exists. The CSR also determines the number of successive "0" bits that reset the carrier-sense state machine.

In SSR register, bit CS notifies whether a carrier was identified. Carrier-sense can also be used as an interrupt. When CS in SSR goes from '1' to '0' i.e. the transmission has stopped, a CS interrupt is invoked (if enabled in IER). The purpose of this interrupt is to inform the MCU that the channel is free again.

If the BB identifies a packet, the carrier-sense algorithm halts. When the BB is in RX mode and LOCK flag in SSR is "0", the CS mechanism is working. When the LOCK flag in SSR is "1", the CS mechanism is not working, since the CS flag does not add any information because a PREAMBLE was identified already. After a PREAMBLE was identified the CS in SSR equals '1'.

8.2.13 Receiver Reference Capacitor Discharge

The BB implements two independent mechanisms for receiver capacitor discharge:

At the end of each received packet.

Zero counter.

Mechanism 1 is enabled/disabled by bit EN_CAP_DISCH in SCR3.

Mechanism 2 is enabled/disabled by bit EN_ZERO_DISCH in SCR3.

The number of "0" bits that will cause a discharge in Mechanism 2 is determined by bits ZERO_DISCH_CNT [0:2].

For both mechanisms, the discharge time is determined by CAP_DIS_PERIOD in SCR3.

Discharge is done by setting RX_TX pin to '1' for a certain time and then setting it back to '0'.

(*) More detailed explanations of the reference capacitor discharge algorithms and motivations can be found in the "RFW - Capacitor Discharge.pdf" document.

8.2.14 Changing BB Configuration

It is not recommended to change the BB configuration while it is in the middle of receiving or transmitting a packet.

Thus, before writing to any of the BB control registers (such as BLR, PRE-L, PRE-H, PPR etc):

Change TX_RX mode to RX.

Disable PREAMBLE search (SEARCH_EN in SCR2)

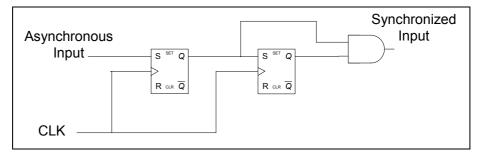
Stop all RX receiving – RX_STOP.

It is then safe to change the BB configuration.



8.2.15 Input Synchronizer

Handling asynchronous inputs to the BB.



8.3 Register Description

The registers in the BB are divided into three groups:

Read-only registers which are mainly status registers.

Write-only registers which are mainly control registers.

Read and write registers.

In case of a RST pulse, all registers are set to their default value.

8.3.1 Bit Length Register (BLR)

This register is both a read and a write register.

It determines the length of the bit in terms of clock cycles.

The bit length will be (BLR+6) clocks, since the minimum length of a bit is 6 clocks.

Default Value: 00 (0+6=6).

8.3.2 Preamble Low Register (PRE-L)

This register is a write-only register.

This register contains the 8 least significant bits of the PREAMBLE.

| Name | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| PRE-L | PR-7 | PR-6 | PR-5 | PR-4 | PR-3 | PR-2 | PR-1 | PR-0 |

Default Value: 0xEB.

8.3.3 Preamble High Register (PRE-H)

This register is a write-only register.

This register contains the 8 most significant bits of the PREAMBLE.

| Name | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| PRE-H | PR-15 | PR-14 | PR-13 | PR-12 | PR-11 | PR-10 | PR-9 | PR-8 |

Default Value: 0xFF.



8.3.4 Packet Parameter Register (PPR)

| Name | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|------|--------------|---------------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| PPR | NET ID_EN | NODE ID_EN | FIXED | CRC1 | CRC0 | RB-2 | RB-1 | RB-0 |

This is a read and a write register. It contains control bits of the transmitted and received packet structure.

Default Value: 0x3A

Bits 0-2: Refresh Bits. RB-0 ~ RB-2

These bits determine the maximum number of successive "zero" bytes are allowed before an added "one" bit is stuffed to the packet by the transmitter state machine. The reason for this feature is to keep the RFW-102 reference capacitor charged.

| Refresh Bit | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|---|-------|-------|-------|
| Refresh bit is added to every byte. | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| Refresh bit is added if 1 byte equals x"00". | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| Refresh bit is added if 2 successive bytes equal x"00". | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| Refresh bit is added if 3 successive bytes equal x"00". | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| Refresh bit is added if 4 successive bytes equal x"00". | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| Refresh bit is added if 5 successive bytes equal x"00". | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| Refresh bit is added if 6 successive bytes equal x"00". | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| Refresh bit is added if 7 successive bytes equal x"00". | 1 | 1 | 1 |

The value of the refresh bit is determined by the value of the reference capacitor.

Bits 3, 4: CRC [0:1]

These bits control the CRC operation for both transmit and receive mode:

| CRC | Bit 4 | Bit 3 |
|--------|-------|-------|
| No CRC | 0 | 0 |
| CRC8 | 0 | 1 |
| CRC8 | 1 | 0 |
| CRC16 | 1 | 1 |

Bit 5: Fixed

This controls the packet mode. When high system packets are fixed size and the length is specified in the Packet Size Register (PSR).

When Fixed is low, the packet size is variable. The size is specified in the header of the incoming or outgoing packets. The location of the packet size field is specified in the LCR register.

Bit 6: NODE_ID_EN

This is NODE_ID control bit.

0: Disables Node ID search

1: Enables Node ID search according to LCR, BIR

Bit 7: NET_ID_EN

This is NET_ID control bit.

0: Disables Net ID search

1: Enables Net ID search according to LCR, NIR

8.3.5 System Control Register 1 (SCR1)

| Na | me | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|----|----|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| N | Ά | N/A |

This byte is reserved.

Default Value: 0x00

8.3.6 System Control Register 2 (SCR2)

| Name | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|------|---------------|---------------|---------------|------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------|-----------|
| SCR2 | PRE MASK 2 | PRE MASK 1 | PRE MASK 0 | STOP RX | TX FIFO RESET | RX FIFO RESET | SEAR CH EN | TX_R X |

This register is a read and a write register. It controls the system operation modes.

Bit 0: TX_RX

Controls the transceiver mode: receive mode or transmit mode

When TX_RX is low – BB is in receive mode (default mode). The output pin RX_TX is set to '0'. BB searches for a PREAMBLE. If PREAMBLE is found, it handles the process of receiving a packet.

If SCR3 (7) is set, then the BB goes to RX mode and the output pin RX_TX is in TX mode.

The capacitor discharge can change the output pin RX_TX to TX mode even if we are in RX mode in the BB. In this case the output pin RX_TX will be in TX for a short duration and then return to RX mode.

When TX_RX is high – BB is in transmit mode. The output pin RX_TX is set to '1'. The BB handles the process of transmitting a packet according to the data in the TX_FIFO. When it finishes transmitting the packet, it automatically goes back to receive mode.



Bit 1: SEARCH_EN

Preamble search enable bit.

- When 1: Enables the search for Preamble in receive mode.
- When 0: Disables the search for Preamble in receive mode, (used when user configures the system while in default receive mode).

This bit's default value is '0'. It must be set to '1' in order to start receiving a packet.

Bit 2: RX_FIFO_RESET

This bit resets the RX_FIFO address pointers when set to Logic 1. This bit is set by the MCU and is cleared automatically by the BB.

Bit 3: TX_FIFO_RESET

This bit resets the TX_FIFO address pointers when set to Logic 1. This bit is set by the MCU and is cleared automatically by the BB.

Bit 4: STOP_RX

This bit stops receiving the current command, resets the RX_FIFO counters and start new searches for a preamble. This bit is set by the MCU and is cleared automatically by the BB.

Bits 5-7: PRE_MASK [0:2]

These bits determine the mask on PRE-H in preamble correlation. Meaning, it determines the size of the PREAMBLE in the receiver.

The PRE-L is always used in the PREAMBLE correlation.

BB cuts off bit from PRE-H register, starting from the MSB.

| PRE_Mask 0 | PRE_Mask 1 | PRE_Mask 2 | Preamble Size |
|------------|------------|------------|---------------|
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 16 |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 15 |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 14 |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 13 |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 12 |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 11 |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 10 |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 9 |

Default Value: 0x60



8.3.7 System Control Register 3 (SCR3)

This register is a read and a write register.

| Name | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|------|-------------|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|-------------------|------------------|-------|
| SCR3 | LOW MODE | ZERO DISCH CNT 2 | ZERO DISCH CNT 1 | ZERO DISCH CNT 0 | EN ZERO DISCH. | CAP DIS PERIOD | EN CAP DISCH. | - |

Bit 1: EN_CAP_DISCH

Enables/disables capacitor discharge mechanism after each received packet:

- 0: Disables discharge
- 1: Enables discharge

This bit overrides Bit 3

Bit 2: CAP_DIS_PERIOD

Determines the capacitor discharge duration:

- 0: The pulse width is 36 clocks, (3 µsec at 12 MHz clock).
- 1: The pulse width is 72 clocks, (3 µsec at 24 MHz clock).

Bit 3: EN_ZERO_DISCH

Enables/disables zero counter mechanism for capacitor discharge:

- 0: Disables discharge
- 1: Enables discharge

Bits 4-6: ZERO_DISCH_CNT [0:2]

Determine the number of zero bits that will trigger a capacitor discharge by the zero counter mechanism.

| ZERO DISCH CNT 0 | ZERO DISCH CNT 1 | ZERO DISCH CNT 2 | Number of Zeros |
|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|-----------------|
| 0 | 0 | 0 | 5 |
| 0 | 0 | 1 | 10 |
| 0 | 1 | 0 | 15 |
| 0 | 1 | 1 | 20 |
| 1 | 0 | 0 | 25 |
| 1 | 0 | 1 | 30 |
| 1 | 1 | 0 | 35 |
| 1 | 1 | 1 | 40 |



Bit 7: LOW_MODE

Enables or disables low power mode for RFW-102:

- 0: Disables low mode (normal mode)
- 1: Enables low mode. BB is in RX mode, while RFW-102 is in TX mode.

User has to put the BB into RX mode and disable RX and PREAMBLE search, before enabling LOW_MODE. This transfers the RFW-102 to TX mode using RX_TX pin, while the BB is still in RX mode.

RFW-102 power consumption is lower in TX mode than in RX mode. BB cannot remain in TX mode, if it is not transmitting. Low mode is the combination of both of the above.

Default Value: 0x01

8.3.8 System Control Register 4 (SCR4)

This register is a read and a write register.

| Name | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|------------|----------|-----------|-------|
| SCR4 | N/A | N/A | N/A | N/A | FIFO FLAGS | WIN CONT | RF_ACTIVE | IE |

Bit 0: IE

This flag enables all interrupts when set to '1'.

When '0' all interrupts are disabled.

Bit 1: RF_ACTIVE

This bit controls the RF_ACTIVE pin. When this bit is high the RF Modem is active.

Bit 2: WIN CONT

This bit determines the size of the WINDOW in the Preamble search module.

IF (BLR+6)>14 and WIN_CONT=1, then the preamble window size is 5

Bit 3: FIFO FLAGS

Determines the RX_FIFO AF flag and TX_FIFO AE flag:

IF FIFO FLAGS = 0 then AF = 12 and AE = 4

IF FIFO FLAGS = 1 then AF = 8 and AE = 8

Default Value: 0x00.



8.3.9 Transmit FIFO Status Register (TFSR)

This register is a read-only register. It contains the number of bytes in the TX_FIFO.

Default Value: 0x00 (TX_FIFO empty).

8.3.10 Receive FIFO Status Register (RFSR)

This register is a read only register. It contains the number of bytes in the RX_FIFO.

Default Value: 0x00 (TR_FIFO empty).

8.3.11 Location Control Register (LCR)

This is a read and write register.

| Name | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| LCR | | SIZE | SIZE | SIZE | NET | NET | NODE | NODE |
| LUR | - | LOC 2 | LOC 1 | LOC 0 | LOC1 | LOC 0 | LOC 1 | LOC 0 |

Bits 0, 1: NODE_LOC [0:1]

These bits determine the location of the NODE_ID parameter in the header (the location is specified in bytes excluding preamble). The location should be fixed for all of different kinds of packets transferred by the system. NODE_ID must never be set to be smaller than NET_ID, if both filters are enabled.

| Location | NODE LOC 1 | NODE LOC 0 |
|----------|------------|------------|
| 2 | 0 | 0 |
| 3 | 0 | 1 |
| 4 | 1 | 0 |
| 5 | 1 | 1 |

Bits 2 ~ 3: NET_LOC [0:1]

These bits determine the location of the NET_ID parameter in the header (the location is specified in bytes excluding preamble). The location should be fixed for all the different kinds of packets transferred by the system.

| Location | NET LOC 1 | NET LOC 0 |
|----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1 | 0 | 0 |
| 2 | 0 | 1 |
| 3 | 1 | 0 |
| 4 | 1 | 1 |



Bits 4 ~ 5: SIZE_LOC [0:2]

These bits determine the location of the Packet Size parameter in the header (the location is specified in bytes, excluding preamble). The location should be fixed for all the different kinds of packets transferred by the system.

| Location | Size LOC 2 | Size LOC 1 | Size LOC 0 |
|----------|------------|------------|------------|
| 2 | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| 3 | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| 4 | 0 | 1 | 0 |
| 5 | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| 6 | 1 | 0 | 0 |
| 7 | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| 8 | 1 | 1 | 0 |
| 9 | 1 | 1 | 1 |

Default Value: 0x00

8.3.12 Node Identity Register (BIR)

This is a read and write register.

When the Receiver State Machine builds the incoming packet, it compares the value in the BIR register to the received data at the location specified in LCR.

If received NODE_ID and the expected NODE_ID are not equal, the packet is discarded.

Four multicast NODE_ID addresses are implemented "111111XX". All packets whose 6 MSBs are "1" are not discarded.

Default Value: 0x00

8.3.13 Net Identity Register (NIR)

This is a read and a write register.

When the Receiver State Machine builds the incoming packet, it compares the value in the NIR to the received data at the location specified in LCR.

If received NET_ID and the expected NET_ID are not equal, the packet is discarded.

Default Value: 0x00



8.3.14 System Status Register (SSR)

| Name | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|------|-------|-------|-----------|-------|-------|---------|--------|-----------|
| SSR | - | TX_UF | BIT_ERROR | LOCK | CS | TXEMPTY | LOCKED | CRC ERROR |

This register is a read-only register. It provides status information to the MCU concerning the communication line and the data transfer. Bits 1, 2, 3 can trigger the interrupt if enabled in the IER. Bits 0, 5 and 6 are set by H/W and cleared automatically after the MCU reads the register. **Bits 1~4** are set and cleared by H/W.

Bit 0: CRC_ERROR

This flag indicates a CRC Error in the packet. The CRC Block sets this flag at the end of each received packet according to the CRC calculation result. BB compares the calculated CRC and the received CRC. When these values differ, the flag goes high.

The flag is cleared only after the MCU reads the SSR register. If the MCU does not read the SSR register, this flag remains "1".

Bit 1: LOCKED_IN

This flag indicates that a packet is being received.

Bit 1 is set to logic 1 whenever the system identifies a new incoming packet (triggers LOCK IN interrupt). The bit will reset to logic 0 when the packet ends (triggers LOCK OUT interrupt) or when one of the IDs fails (NET or BYTE). This indicator is important whenever we want to switch to transmit mode because it can tell us that the line is busy and that in most cases the transmission won't succeed. The Lock triggers interrupt for every change in the bit status.

Bit 2: TX_EMPTY

This bit is the Transmitter Empty flag. When this bit is high the system is available for loading the next packet for transmission and BB is in receive mode. When the flag is low, BB is in the middle of a packet transmission.

When transmitting few successive packets, the MCU should wait to the end of a packet before it reload the TX_FIFO with the next packet.

Bit 3: CS

Carrier Sense detection bit.

When this bit is high, the system has identified a structure of packet transmission in the air according to CSR.

When low, no carrier has been detected. This bit is only valid in receive mode. The conditions for setting or clearing this flag are determined in CS register.

When LOCKED is high then CS is meaningless.



Bit 4: LOCK

This signals whether a PREAMBLE was identified or still searching.

When flag is "0", the receiver is searching for PREAMBLE.

When flag is "1" a PREAMBLE was identified. If a packet was discarded for any reason, LOCK flag goes to 1.

Bit 5: BIT_ERROR

This flag indicate that there was some error in the received package. The packet was not received according the expected timing specifications. The packet can still pass CRC verification.

Bit 6:TX_UF

This flag is set whenever the MCU reads a byte from an empty TX_FIFO.

This flag indicates abnormal end of packet transmission. The MCU transmitter's state machine has expected to find a valid byte in the TX_FIFO according to the packet size, but it found an empty TX_FIFO. When this event occurs, the TX_EMPTY interrupt is invoked and TX_UF(under flow) flag is set to '1'.

This flag is set by hardware and cleaned by MCU. It is cleaned whenever the MCU read the SSR register.

Default Value: 0x04.

8.3.15 Packet Size Register (PSR)

This is a read and a write register.

It contains the Packet Size in byte units. When working in fixed size packets (see Control Bit-1), the size will be fixed for all types of packets.

The size in PSR excludes 2 bytes of PREAMBLE and 2, 1 or 0 bytes of CRC.

Default Value: 0x00.

8.3.16 Carrier Sense Register (CSR)

This is both a read and a write register.

| Name | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| CSR | ZERO | ZERO | ZERO | ZERO | ONE | ONE | ONE | ONE |
| CSR | CNT.3 | CNT.2 | CNT.1 | CNT.0 | CNT.3 | CNT.2 | CNT.1 | CNT.0 |

Bits 0-3: ONE_CNT [0:3]

The number of successive "1" bits that set the carrier sense register high.

Bit 4-7: ZERO_CNT [0:3]

The number of successive "0" bits that reset the carrier sense register (CS='0').

Default Value: 0x44



8.4 Interrupt Registers

8.4.1 Interrupt Enable Register (IER)

This register is a write and a read register.

| Name | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------------|-------|--------------|-------------|------------|
| IER | CS | TX_AE | RX AF | TX EMPTY | RX_OF | LINK_ DIS | LOCK OUT | LOCK IN |

Default Value: 0x00.

For all flags in this register: 0 – Disable; 1 – Enable

Bit 0: LOCK_IN

This flag enables/disables the LOCK IN interrupt.

PREABLE + NODE_ID + NET_ID identified correctly triggers LOCK IN interrupt.

Bit 1: LOCK_OUT

This flag enables/disables the LOCK OUT interrupt.

End of received packet triggers LOCK_OUT interrupt.

Bit 2: LINK_DIS

This flag enables/disables the LINK_DIS interrupt.

The zero counter capacitor discharge triggers the LINK_DIS interrupt.

Bit 3: RX_OF

This flag enables/disables the RX_OF interrupt.

End of received packet triggers RX_OF interrupt.

Bit 4: TX_EMPTY

This flag enables/disables the TX_EMPTY (Transmitter Empty) interrupt.

TX_EMPTY interrupt tell the MCU that the transmitter has just finished transmitting a packet. BB goes to RX mode after finishing the transmission of a packet.

Bit 5: RX_AF

This flag enables/disables the RX_AF interrupt.

The RX_AF interrupt is triggered when RX_FIFO AF flag goes from '0' to '1'.

Bit 6: TX_AE

This flag enables/disables the TX_AE interrupt.

The TX_AE interrupt is triggered when TX_FIFO AE flag goes from '0' to '1'.

Bit 7: CS

This flag enables/disables the CS interrupt.

CS flag in SSR negative edge triggers CS interrupt.



| Name | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|-------|-------|
| IIR | CS | ΤX | RX | ТХ | RX OF | LINK_D | LOCK | LOCK |
| IIK | 63 | AE | AF | EMPTY | RA_OF | IS | OUT | IN |

This is a read only register.

When the MCU accesses the IIR, all interrupts freeze. While the MCU access is occurring, the system records the changes in the interrupts but waits until the MCU access is complete before updating the register. A flag is active only when the matching interrupt enable bit is set, and does not depend on the IE bit value. The flags are set by H/W and cleared after the MCU reads the register.

Bit 0: This bit reflects the LOCK IN flag interrupt when enabled by IER.

LOCK_IN interrupt is invoke whenever a PREAMBLE+NET_ID+NODE_ID is recognized.

If NET_ID is disabled, then a received PREAMBLE+ NODE_ID invokes the interrupt.

If NODE_ID is disabled, then a received PREAMBLE+ NET_ID invokes the interrupt.

If NET_ID and NODE_ID are disabled, then a received PREAMBLE invokes the interrupt.

Bit 1: This bit reflects the LOCK OUT flag interrupt when enabled by IER.

LOCK_OUT interrupt is invoked whenever RFW-D100 has finished receiving a packet. The end of the packet is determined according to the packet size.

Bit 2: This bit reflects the LINK_DIS flag interrupt when enabled by IER.

This interrupt is invoked by the zero counter capacitor discharge mechanism.

- Bit 3: This bit reflects the RX_OF flag interrupt when enabled by IER.
- Bit 4: This bit reflects the TX EMPTY flag interrupt when enabled by IER.
- Bit 5: This bit reflects the RX FIFO AF flag interrupt when enabled by IER.
- Bit 6: This bit reflects the TX FIFO AE flag interrupt when enabled by IER.

Bit 7: CS – when CS flag goes from "1" to "0" an interrupt is invoked.



8.5 List of BB Register Mapping

| Register Address | Write | Read | Default | Values | |
|------------------|---------|------------|---------|--------|--|
| 0 (00000) | TX_FIFO | RX_FIFO | | | |
| 1 (00001) | PRI | PRE_L 0xFF | | | |
| 2 (00010) | PRE | E_H | 0xl | =F | |
| 3 (00011) | FRO | C_L | 0xl | =F | |
| 4 (00100) | FRO | С_Н | 0xl | =F | |
| 5 (00101) | SC | R1 | 0x | 00 | |
| 6 (00110) | SC | R2 | 0x | 60 | |
| 7 (00111) | SC | R3 | 0x | 01 | |
| 8 (01000) | SC | R4 | 0x00 | | |
| 9 (01001) | LC | R | 0x00 | | |
| 10 (01010) | BI | R | 0x00 | | |
| 11 (01011) | N | R | 0x00 | | |
| 12 (01100) | PS | SR | 0x | 00 | |
| 13 (01101) | PF | ۲R | 0x3 | 3A | |
| 14 (01110) | BL | R | 0x | 00 | |
| 15 (01111) | CS | SR | 0x | 44 | |
| 16 (10000) | IE | R | 0x | 00 | |
| 17 (10001) | | IIR | | | |
| 18 (10010) | | SSR | | 0x04 | |
| 19 (10011) | | TFR | 0x00 | | |
| 20 (10100) | | RFR | | 0x00 | |

8.6 MCU BB Control Registers

8.6.1 Control Registers List

RFAAR (0x2D): Register R2D indicates BB indirect RAM address.

RFDB (0x2E): Register R2E indicates BB indirect RAM data.

RFACR (0x2F): Register R2F indicates BB RAM access control

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| - | - | - | - | - | RRST | RFRD | RFWR |

RFINTF (0x30): BB interrupt flags

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|--------|--------|---------------|--------|---------------|---------------|--------------|
| CSDF | TX_AEF | RX_AFF | TX_ EMPTYF | RX_OFF | LINK_ DISF | LOCK_OU TF | LOCK_ INF |



RFINTE (0x99): BB interrupt enable.

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | | | Bit 3 | | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|--------|--------|---------------|--------|---------------|---------------|--------------|
| CSDE | TX_AEE | RX_AFE | TX_ EMPTYE | RX_OFE | LINK_ DISE | LOCK_OU TE | LOCK_ INE |

PRIE (0x80): Peripherals enable control.

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| SPIE | | WME | ADE | PWM1E | PWM0E | TCCE | FRCE |

8.6.2 BB Control Example

| ORG 0X0060 BC RETI | RFINTF, TX_EMPTYF | // TX_EMPTY INT address // RF data send out, clear INT flag. |
|----------------------------------|--|---|
| ORG 0X0100 START: | | |
| BS NOP | RFACR, RRST | // BB reset. |
| BC BS MOV MOV ENI | RFACR, RRST PRIE, WME A, #0x10 RFINTE, A | // BB power enable. // BB INT.TX_EMPTY enable. // enable all INT. |
| RF_TX_INITIAL: | | |
| WRITE WRITE WRITE WRITE | #SCR2, #8 #BLR, #10 #PPR, #33 | <pre>// Reset TX_FIFO, RX mode. // Set bit rate. // Set package size to be fixed. // Refresh bit mode 1. CRC disabled</pre> |
| WRITE | #PSR, #6 | // Set package size to 6. |
| WRITE WRITE | #PRE_H, #0xDC #PRE_L, #0xA7 | // Set preamble High byte value. // Set preamble Low byte value. |
| RF_SEND_DATA: | | |
| WRITE | #TX_FIFO, #0x01 | <pre>// Write first byte of package to TX_FIF0.</pre> |
| WRITE WRITE WRITE WRITE | <pre>#TX_FIFO, #0x02 #TX_FIFO, #0x03 #TX_FIFO, #0x04 #TX_FIFO, #0x05</pre> | |
| WRITE | #TX_FIFO, #0x06 | <pre>// Write last byte of package to TX_FIFO.</pre> |
| READ WRITE WRITE WRITE | | // Read TFR register data // enable TX_EMPTY INT // enable all INT. // move from RX to TX mode. |
| LOOP: | | |
| JMP | LOOP | |
| WRITE_DATA_TO_R | F: | // BB register write SUB |
| BC NOP NOP | RFACR, RFWR | |
| BS RET | RFACR, RFWR | |

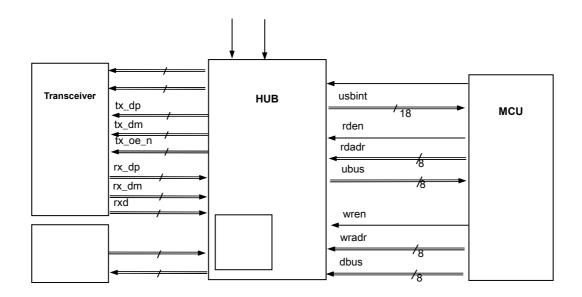
| ELAN |
|------|
| Y |

| READ_DATA_FROM | _RF: | // BB register read SUB |
|----------------|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| NOP | | |
| BC | RFACR, RFRD | |
| NOP | | // Note the access time |
| MOV | A, RFDB | |
| NOP | | |
| NOP | | |
| NOP | | |
| BS | RFACR, RFRD | |
| RET | | |
| | | |
| • | ========================== | |
| | | // BB register write MACRO |
| MOV | A, #CON2 | |
| MOV | RFDB, A | |
| MOV | A, #CON1 | |
| MOV | RFAAR, A | |
| CALL | WRITE_DATA_TO_RF | |
| ENDM | | |
| ; ========= | | |
| | #CON, REG | // BB register read MACRO |
| MOV | A, #CON | |
| MOV | RFAAR, A | |
| CALL | READ_DATA_FROM_RF | |
| MOV | REG, A | |
| ENDM | | |



9 Universal Serial Bus Hub (USB Hub)

- 9.1 Instruction
- 9.2 Block Diagram



9.3 USB Embedded Function FIFO Allocation

| End Point Number | End Point Type | FIFO Size | | |
|------------------|------------------|------------------|--|--|
| 0 | Control | 64 byte IN | | |
| 0 | Control | 64 byte OUT | | |
| 1 | Interrupt / Bulk | 64 byte IN / OUT | | |
| 2 | Interrupt / Bulk | 64 byte IN / OUT | | |
| 3 | Interrupt / Bulk | 64 byte IN / OUT | | |

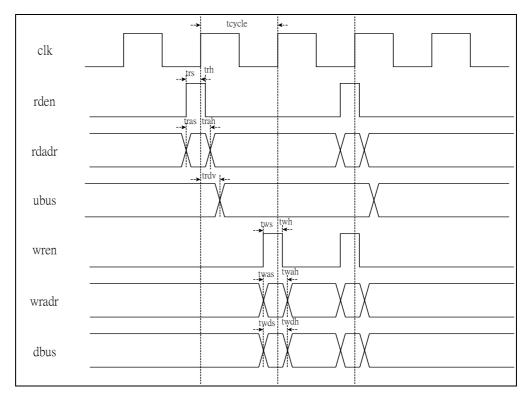




9.4 Pin Description

| Pin | I/O | Description |
|--------------|-----|--|
| speed[3:0] | 0 | Speed USB device speed, always tie to 1 for upstream. Default value is 1 for downstream. 1: full speed device 0: low speed device |
| suspend[3:0] | 0 | Transceiver Suspend Disable transceiver when port is suspended or disabled. 1: Disable transceiver 0: Enable transceiver |
| tx_dp[3:0] | 0 | Output Data Plus USB output data plus used for upstream and downstream Ports 2-4 |
| tx_dm[3:0] | 0 | Output Data Minus USB output data minus used for upstream and downstream Ports 2-4 |
| tx_oe_n[3:0] | 0 | Output Enable USB data output enable used for upstream and downstream Ports 2-4 |
| rx_dp[3:0] | Ι | Input Data Plus USB input data plus used for upstream and downstream Ports 2-4 |
| rx_dm[3:0] | Ι | Input Data Minus USB input data minus used for upstream and downstream Ports 2-4 |
| rxd[3:0] | Ι | Input Data USB input data used for upstream and downstream Ports 2-4 |
| ovcur[3:1] | Ι | Over Current Over-current indication of the downstream Ports 2-4 |
| pwron[3:1] | 0 | Power-on Switch Power-on switch of the downstream Ports 2-4 |
| usbclk | - | 48MHz Clock for USB |
| rst_n | Ι | Reset An active low hardware reset signal to the USB. |
| mcuclk | - | Clock Signal from MCU |
| usbint[17:0] | 0 | Interrupt Output Active high signals generated by the USB to the MCU. |
| rden | I | Read Enable The signal is asserted high for a read operation |
| rdadr[7:0] | I | Read Address Bus Read address generated by MCU for the USB register selection. |
| ubus[7:0] | 0 | Data Output Data bus output to MCU |
| wren | I | Write Enable The signal is asserted high for a write operation. |
| wradr[7:0] | I | Write Address Bus Write address is generated by the MCU for the USB register selection. |
| dbus[7:0] | I | Data Input Data bus input to MCU |





9.5 Timing Diagram of MCU Interface

| Symbol | Parameter | Min | Max |
|--------|--------------------------|-------|-----|
| tcycle | MCU clock cycle time | 20ns | - |
| trs | Read enable setup time | 3ns | - |
| trh | Read enable hold time | 0.1ns | - |
| tras | Read address setup time | 3ns | - |
| trah | Read address hold time | 0.1ns | - |
| trdv | Read data valid time | - | 5ns |
| tws | Write enable setup time | 3ns | - |
| twh | Write enable hold time | 0.1ns | - |
| twas | Write address setup time | 3ns | - |
| twah | Write address hold time | 0.1ns | - |
| twds | Write data setup time | 3ns | _ |
| twdh | Write data hold time | 0.1ns | _ |



9.6 USB Hub and Function Register Summary

| Register | ADDR | Reset | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|----------|-------|-------|------------|------------|--------------|------------|-------------|----------|-------------|----------|
| USBTR | 0x1CC | Р | USBT7 | USBT6 | USBT5 | USBT4 | USBT3 | USBT2 | USBT1 | USBT0 |
| | | | | | FUNEN | FUNRST | RESUME | SUSPEND | PLUG | URST |
| GCNTR | 0x1CD | | | | P/H | P/H | P/H | P/H | Ρ | P/H |
| EP1CNTR | 0x1CE | P/H/S | | | EP1EN | | | EP1DIR | EP1TP1 | EP1TP0 |
| EP2CNTR | 0x1CF | P/H/S | | | EP2EN | | | EP2DIR | EP2TP1 | EP2TP0 |
| EP3CNTR | 0x1D0 | P/H/S | | | EP3EN | | | EP3DIR | EP3TP1 | EP3TP0 |
| EPINTR | 0x1D1 | Р | | | INT3 | INT2 | INT1 | INTOIN | INTOTX | INTORX |
| EPINTE | 0x1D2 | Р | | | INT3E | INT2E | INT1E | INTOINE | INT0TXE | INT0RXE |
| | | _ | | | | | FRWPINT | RUEINT | IDLEINT | RSTINT |
| STAINTR | 0x1D3 | Р | | | | | P/H/S | P/H | P/H | Р |
| STAINTE | 0x1D4 | Р | | | | | FRWPINTE | RUEINTE | IDLEINTE | RSTINTE |
| FAR | 0x1D5 | Р | | FADDR6 | FADDR5 | FADDR4 | FADDR3 | FADDR2 | FADDR1 | FADDR0 |
| EP0RXTR | 0x1D6 | Р | | | | | | USETUPOW | USETUP | UOUT |
| EP0RXCSR | 0x1D7 | P/H/S | CDTOGORX | ERRSTSORX | STALLSTSORX | ACKSTSORX | DTOGERRIPX | DTOG0RX | SESTALLORX | RXENDRX |
| EP0TXCSR | 0x1D8 | P/H/S | CDTOG0TX | ERRSTSOTX | STALLSTSOTX | ACKSTSOTX | - | DTOG0TX | SESTALLOTX | TXENUTX |
| EP1CSR | 0x1D9 | P/H/S | CDTOG1 | ERRSTS1 | STALLSTS1 | ACKSTS1 | DTOGERR1 | DTOG1 | SESTALL1 | RXIXENI |
| EP2CSR | 0x1DA | P/H/S | CDTOG2 | ERRSTS2 | STALLSTS2 | ACKSTS2 | DTOGERR2 | DTOG2 | SESTALL2 | RXIXEN2 |
| EP3CSR | 0x1DB | P/H/S | CDTOG3 | ERRSTS3 | STALLSTS3 | ACKSTS3 | DTOGERR3 | DTOG3 | SESTALL3 | RXIXENB |
| EP0RXCTR | 0x1DC | х | | EPORXCT6 | EPORXCT5 | EPORXCT4 | EPORXCT3 | EPORXCT2 | EPORXCT1 | EP0RXCT0 |
| EP0TXCTR | 0x1DD | H/S | | EP0TXCT6 | EP0TXCT5 | EPOTXCT4 | EP0TXCT3 | EPOTXCT2 | EP0TXCT1 | EP0TXCT0 |
| EP1CTR | 0x1DE | H/S | | EP1CT6 | EP1CT5 | EP1CT4 | EP1CT3 | EPCT2 | EPCT1 | EPCT0 |
| EP2CTR | 0x1DF | H/S | | EP2CT6 | EP2CT5 | EP2CT4 | EP2CT3 | EPCT2 | EPCT1 | EPCT0 |
| EP3CTR | 0x1E0 | H/S | | EP3CT6 | EP3CT5 | EP3CT4 | EP3CT3 | EPCT2 | EPCT1 | EPCT0 |
| EP0RXDA | 0x1E1 | х | EP0RX7 | EP0RX6 | EP0RX5 | EP0RX4 | EP0RX3 | EP0RX2 | EP0RX1 | EP0RX0 |
| EP0TXDA | 0x1E2 | х | EP0TX7 | EP0TX6 | EP0TX5 | EP0TX4 | EP0TX3 | EP0TX2 | EP0TX1 | EP0TX0 |
| EP1DAR | 0x1E3 | х | EP1D7 | EP1D6 | EP1D5 | EP1D4 | EP1D3 | EP1D2 | EP1D1 | EP1D0 |
| EP2DAR | 0x1E4 | х | EP2D7 | EP2D6 | EP2D5 | EP2D4 | EP2D3 | EP2D2 | EP2D1 | EP2D0 |
| EP3DAR | 0x1E5 | х | EP3D7 | EP3D6 | EP3D5 | EP3D4 | EP3D3 | EP3D2 | EP3D1 | EP3D0 |
| HGSR | 0x1E6 | H/S | | | CONFG | RMWUPEN | PWRM | PWRS/WM | PWRS/W | OVCM |
| HINTR | 0x1E7 | х | HPSTSCINT | SOFINT | EOF2INT | EOF1INT | HINT1 | HINTOIN | HINTOTX | HINTORX |
| HINTE | 0x1E8 | х | HPSTSCINTE | SOFINTE | EOF2INTE | EOF1INTE | HINT1E | HINTOINE | HINT0TXE | HINTORXE |
| HAR | 0x1E9 | Х | | HADDR6 | HADDR5 | HADDR4 | HADDR3 | HADDR2 | HADDR1 | HADDR0 |
| HEP0RXTR | 0x1EA | х | | | | | | HSETUPOW | HSETUP | HOUT |
| HEPRICSR | 0x1EB | H/S | HODTOGORX | HERRSTSORX | HSTALLSTSTRX | HACKSTSORX | HDICOHERTRA | HDTOGORX | HSESTALLORX | HRXENORX |

P: Power-on reset; H: Hardware reset; S: Software reset



| Register | ADDR | Reset | Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-----------|-------|-------|-----------|------------|---------------|-------------|----------|-----------|-------------|----------|
| HEFOTICSR | 0x1EC | H/S | HODTOGOTX | HERRENSOIX | HSTALLSTSOTX | HACKSTSOTX | - | HDTOGOTX | HEESTALLOTX | HTXENOTX |
| HEPTIXCSR | 0x1ED | H/S | HODTOG1TX | HERREISTIX | HSTALLSTISTIX | HACKSTISTIX | - | HDTOG1TX | HEESTALLITX | HIXENITX |
| HERRICIR | 0x1EE | х | | | | | HEPORXC3 | HEPORXC2 | HEPORXC1 | HEPORXCO |
| HEPODICIR | 0x1EF | H/S | | | | | HEPOTXC3 | HEP0TXC2 | HEPOTXC1 | HEPOTXCO |
| HERRICAR | 0x1F0 | х | HEPORXD7 | HEPORXD6 | HEPORXD5 | HEPORXD4 | HEPORXD3 | HEPORXD2 | HEPORXD1 | HEPORXD0 |
| HERODOAR | 0x1F1 | х | HEPOTXD7 | HEPOTXD6 | HEPOTXD5 | HEPOTXD4 | HEPOTXD3 | HEP0TXD2 | HEPOTXD1 | HEPOTXDO |
| HEPITXDAR | 0x1F2 | х | | | | HSTSCP4 | HSTSCP3 | HSTSCP2 | HSTSCP1 | HSTSC |
| HPCONR | 0x1F3 | H/S | CMDVLD | | HPCON5 | HPCON4 | HPCON3 | HPADDR2 | HPADDR1 | HPADDRO |
| HPSTAR | 0x1F4 | х | DPSTATE4 | DMSTATE4 | DPSTATE3 | DMSTATE3 | DPSTATE2 | DMSTATE2 | DPSTATE1 | DMSTATE1 |
| HSR | 0x1F5 | х | | | | | OVIC | LPSC | OVI | LPS |
| HPSR1 | 0x1F6 | х | | LSDA1 | PPWRSTA1 | PRTSTS1 | POCI1 | PSUSSTS1 | PENSTS1 | PCSTS1 |
| HPSR2 | 0x1F7 | х | | LSDA2 | PPWRSTA2 | PRTSTS2 | POCI2 | PSUSSTS2 | PENSTS2 | PCSTS2 |
| HPSR3 | 0x1F8 | х | | LSDA3 | PPWRSTA3 | PRTSTS3 | POCI3 | PSUSSTS3 | PENSTS3 | PCSTS3 |
| HPSR4 | 0x1F9 | х | | LSDA4 | PPWRSTA4 | PRTSTS4 | POCI4 | PSUSSTS4 | PENSTS4 | PCSTS4 |
| HPSCR1 | 0x1FA | х | | | | PRTSTSC1 | POCIC1 | PSUSSTSC1 | PENSTSC | PCSTSC1 |
| HPSCR2 | 0x1FB | х | | | | PRTSTSC | POCIC2 | PSUSSTS | PENSTSC | PCSTSC2 |
| HPSCR3 | 0x1FC | х | | | | PRTSTSC3 | POCIC3 | PSUSSTSC3 | PENSTSC3 | PCSTSC3 |
| HPSCR4 | 0x1FD | х | | | | PRTSTSC | POCIC4 | PSUSSTS | PENSTSC | PCSTSC4 |
| FNLR | 0x1FE | х | FN7 | FN6 | FN5 | FN4 | FN3 | FN2 | FN1 | FN0 |
| FNHR | 0x1FF | х | | | | | | FN10 | FN9 | FN8 |

9.6.1 USB General Control Register – GCNTR (0x1CD)

| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|-------|-------|-----|----|---|
| 0 | URST | R/W0C | R/W | 0 | Software Reset S/W sets this bit and will reset the whole USB compound device. All registers return to their default value and the USB compound device will be in the default state. H/W will clear this bit after the reset is completed. |
| 1 | PLUG | R | R/W | 0 | Connect USB hub When set to 1 by S/W,1 will be driven to the connect pin, thus the pull-high resistance is connected to the USB bus, and the USB compound device is connected to the USB bus. When cleared to 0 by S/W, 0 will be driven to the connect pin, thus the pull-high resistance is not connected to the USB bus, and the USB compound device is not connected to the USB bus. This bit will be reset by S/W reset and USB reset. |



| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|----------|-------|-----|----|---|
| 2 | SUSPEND | R/W0C | R/W | 0 | Suspend State Enable Set by S/W to force the whole USB compound device to enter suspend state. S/W is allowed to set this bit if the USB bus has been in the idle state for more than 3ms. The USB compound device will leave suspend state if S/W clears this bit or the resume bit is set. This bit will be cleared by H/W if resume bit is set. This bit will be reset by S/W reset and USB reset. |
| 3 | RESUME | R/W0C | R/W | 0 | Send Resume to USB Bus When set to 1, the USB compound device will send a resume signal to the USB bus after the USB bus has been in the idle state for more than 5ms. The resume signal will be driven for 5ms, H/W will clear this bit after completing resume sending. |
| 4 | FUNRST | R/W0C | R/W | 0 | Software Reset Embedded Function S/W sets this bit which will reset the USB Embedded function. This bit should be set to 1 when the SetPortReset of this port is received. When this bit is set: All registers of the embedded function (EP1C, etc) return to their default value. All FIFOs of the embedded function are cleared. H/W will clear this bit after the reset is completed. |
| 5 | FUNEN | R | R/W | 0 | Enable Embedded Function Embedded Function is connected and active only when this bit is set to 1. This bit should be cleared to 0 when the SetPortSuspend of this port is received. |
| 7-6 | Reserved | | | | |



9.6.2 Endpoint X Control Register – EP1/2/3CNTR (0x1CE~0x1D0)

Endpoint 1 Control Register (EP1CNTR)

Endpoint 2 Control Register (EP2CNTR)

| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|----------|-----|-----|----|---|
| 1-0 | EPXTP | R | R/W | 3 | Endpoint Type. These bits program the type of endpoint. Bit1 Bit0 Type 0 0 Un-used 1 0 Bulk 1 1 Intterrupt |
| 2 | EPXDIR | R | R/W | 1 | Endpoint Direction. 0=OUT 1=IN |
| 4-3 | Reserved | | | | |
| 5 | EPXEN | R | R/W | 0 | Endpoint Enable/Disable 0=Disable endpoint 1=Enable endpoint |
| 7-6 | Reserved | | | | |

9.6.3 Endpoint Interrupt Event Status Register – EPINTR (0x1D1)

| 0 INTORX R/W R 0 ends with ACK or OUT transaction ends ACK or STALL. It is also set when SETUPOW (EPORXTK Register) bit is s Needs to check EPORXCS Register for details. 0 INTORX R/W R 0 SETUPOW (EPORXTK Register) bit is s Needs to check EPORXCS Register for details. 1 INTOTX R/W R/WOC 0 When S/W clears all the OUT, SETUP a SETUPOW bits in EPORXTR Register, bit will be cleared automatically. 1 INTOTX R/W R/WOC 0 When S/W writes a 0, it will clear this bit when a 1 is written, no change occurs. | Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|--|-----|--------|-----|-------|----|--|
| 1 INTOTX R/W R/W0C 0 bit will be cleared automatically. 1 INTOTX R/W R/W0C 0 EP0 USB TX Event Set by H/W when IN transaction ends with ACK or STALL. | 0 | INTORX | R/W | R | 0 | Set by H/W when either SETUP transaction ends with ACK or OUT transaction ends with ACK or STALL. It is also set when SETUPOW (EP0RXTK Register) bit is set. Needs to check EP0RXCS Register for |
| 1 INTOTX R/W R/W0C 0 Set by H/W when IN transaction ends with ACK or STALL. 1 INTOTX R/W R/W0C 0 When S/W writes a 0, it will clear this bit when a 1 is written, no change occurs. | | | | | | SETUPOW bits in EP0RXTR Register, this |
| | 1 | INTOTX | R/W | R/W0C | 0 | Set by H/W when IN transaction ends with ACK or STALL. When S/W writes a 0, it will clear this bit, |



| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|----------|-----|-------|----|---|
| 2 | INTOIN | R/W | R/W0C | 0 | <i>EP0 USB IN Token Event</i> Set by H/W when a valid IN token is received. When S/W writes a 0, it will clear this bit, when a 1 is written, no change occurs. H/W write operation has a higher priority if H/W write and S/W write occur at the same time. |
| 3 | INT1 | R/W | R/W0C | 0 | <i>EP1 Interrupt</i> Set by H/W when IN transaction (Interrupt IN / Bulk IN) ends with ACK or STALL or OUT transaction (Bulk OUT) ends with ACK or STALL. IN or OUT transaction is decided by Endpoint Type. When S/W writes a 0, it will clear this bit, when a 1 is written, no change occurs. H/W write operation has a higher priority if H/W write and S/W write occur at the same time. |
| 4 | INT2 | R/W | R/W0C | 0 | <i>EP2 Interrupt</i> Set by H/W when IN transaction (Interrupt IN / Bulk IN) ends with ACK or STALL or OUT transaction (Bulk OUT) ends with ACK or STALL. IN or OUT transaction is decided by Endpoint Type. When S/W writes a 0, it will clear this bit, when a 1 is written, no change occurs. H/W write operation has a higher priority if H/W write and S/W write occur at the same time. |
| 5 | INT3 | R/W | R/W0C | 0 | EP3 Interrupt Set by H/W when IN transaction (Interrupt IN / Bulk IN) ends with ACK or STALL or OUT transaction (Bulk OUT) ends with ACK or STALL. IN or OUT transaction is decided by Endpoint Type. When S/W writes a 0, it will clear this bit, when a 1 is written, no change occurs. H/W write operation has a higher priority if H/W write and S/W write occur at the same time. |
| 7-6 | Reserved | | | | |



9.6.4 Endpoint Interrupt Event Enable Control Register – EPINTE (0x1D2)

| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|----------------|-----|-----|----|-------------------------------|
| 0 | INTORXE | R | R/W | 0 | EP0 USB RX Event Enable |
| 1 | INT0TXE | R | R/W | 0 | EP0 USB TX Event Enable |
| 2 | INTOINE | R | R/W | 0 | EP0 USB IN Token Event Enable |
| 3 | INT1E | R | R/W | 0 | EP1 interrupt Enable |
| 4 | INT2E | R | R/W | 0 | EP2 interrupt Enable |
| 5 | INT3E | R | R/W | 0 | EP3 interrupt Enable |
| 7-6 | Reserved | | | | |

| 9.6.5 | State Interrupt | Event Flag Register - | - STAINTR (0x1D3) |
|-------|-----------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
|-------|-----------------|-----------------------|-------------------|

| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|----------|-----|-------|----|---|
| 0 | RSTINT | R/W | R/W0C | 0 | USB Bus Reset Event Detect Set by H/W when reset signal is detected on the USB bus. After a USB bus reset, all registers return to their default value and the USB device will be in the default state. When S/W writes a 0, it will clear this bit, when a 1 is written, no change occurs. H/W write operation has a higher priority if H/W write and S/W write occur at the same time. |
| 1 | IDLEINT | R/W | R/W0C | 0 | USB Bus Suspend Detect Set by H/W when the USB bus is idle every 3ms. When S/W writes a 0, it will clear this bit, when a 1 is written, no change occurs. H/W write operation has a higher priority if H/W write and S/W write occur at the same time. |
| 2 | RUEINT | R/W | R/W0C | 0 | USB Bus Resume Detect Set by H/W when resume signal is detected. When S/W writes a 0, it will clear this bit, when a 1 is written, no change occurs. H/W write operation has a higher priority if H/W write and S/W write occur at the same time. |
| 3 | FRWPINT | R/W | R/W0C | 0 | Function Remote Wake-up interrupt The USB hardware sets this bit to signal that an external interrupt causes a remote wake-up. This remote wake-up should be assigned to a peripheral function. |
| 7-4 | Reserved | | | | |



9.6.6 State Interrupt Event Enable Control Register – STAINTE (0x1D4)

| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|----------|-----|-----|----|--|
| 0 | RSTINTE | R | R/W | 0 | Enable USB Bus Reset Event Detect |
| 1 | IDLEINTE | R | R/W | 0 | Enable USB Bus Suspend 3ms Detect |
| 2 | RUEINTE | R | R/W | 0 | Enable USB Bus Resume Detect |
| 3 | FRWPINTE | R | R/W | 0 | Function Remote Wake-up interrupt Enable |
| 7-4 | Reserved | | | | |

9.6.7 Function Address Register – FAR (0x1D5)

| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|----------|-----|-----|----|--------------------|
| 6-0 | FADDR | R | R/W | 0 | USB Device Address |
| 7 | Reserved | | | | |

9.6.8 Endpoint 0 RX Token Register - EP0RXTR (0x1D6)

| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|----------|-----|-------|----|--|
| 0 | UOUT | R/W | R/W0C | 0 | RX OUT Token Set by H/W to indicate OUT token is received and transaction ends with ACK or STALL. When S/W writes a 0, it will clear this bit, when a 1 is written, no change occurs. |
| 1 | USETUP | R/W | R/W0C | 0 | RX SETUP Token Set by H/W to indicate SETUP token is received and transaction ends with ACK. When S/W writes a 0, it will clear this bit, when a 1 is written, no change occurs. |
| 2 | USETUPOW | R/W | R/W0C | 0 | SETUP Overwrite Set by H/W to indicate SETUP token is received when RX FIFO is not empty (no matter it is ended with error or ACK). When S/W writes a 0, it will clear this bit, when a 1 is written, no change occurs. |
| 7-3 | Reserved | | | | |



9.6.9 Endpoint 0 RX Command/Status Register - EP0RXCSR (0x1D7)

| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|-----------------|-------|-----|----|---|
| 0 | RXEN0RX | R/W0C | R/W | 1 | RX Enable Set by S/W to enable rx USB data. USB data will be written to FIFO and ACK will be returned if the bit "SESTALL" is not set. Clear by H/W to indicate transaction ends with ACK or STALL. If this bit is 0,USB data will be discarded and NAK will be returned. SETUP packets will be written to FIFO even if this bit is not set and ACK will be returned always. This register will be reset by USB reset or S/W reset. |
| 1 | SESTALL0 RX | R/W | R/W | 1 | Send STALL If set, STALL will be returned to the OUT transaction. S/W is allowed to set or clear this bit. H/W clears this bit when SETUP transaction ends with ACK. H/W sets this bit when STALL is returned to any EP0 transaction. |
| 2 | DTOGORX | R/W | R | 0 | Data Toggle Bit Update by H/W to indicate the data toggle bit for current USB transaction. |
| 3 | DTOGERR 0RX | R/W | R | 0 | Data Toggle Error Set by H/W to indicate toggle error occurs. Cleared when S/W writes a 0 to clear the EP0 RX event interrupt status. |
| 4 | ACKSTSORX | R/W | R | 0 | ACK Status Set by H/W when a transaction is completed with ACK handshake. This bit will be updated automatically at the next valid transaction (ends with ACK or STALL). |
| 5 | STALLSTS 0RX | R/W | R | 0 | STALL Status Set by H/W when a transaction is completed with STALL handshake. This bit will be updated automatically at the next valid transaction (ends with ACK or STALL). |
| 6 | ERRSTSORX | R/W | R | 0 | Error Status Set by H/W to indicate either USB PID error, CRC error, bit stuffing error or no data phase from USB host occur. This bit will be updated automatically at the next valid transaction (ends with ACK or STALL) or when SETUPOW (EPORXTK Register) is set. |
| 7 | CDTOG0RX | R/W0C | W | 0 | Clear endpoint Toggle. When S/W writes a 1 to this bit, it will clear the DTOG bit which is in the same register. |



| | (0x1D8) | | | | | | | |
|-----|-----------------|-------|-----|----|---|--|--|--|
| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description | | | |
| 0 | TXEN0TX | R/W0C | R/W | 0 | TX Enable Set by S/W to enable tx USB data. USB data Is ready in the FIFO and will be sent to USB bus if the bit "SESTALL" is not set. S/W should write data then byte count the enabled tx. Cleared by H/W in two cases: Indicate IN transaction ends with ACK or STALL. After SETUP transaction ends with ACK. This register will be reset by USB reset or S/W reset. | | | |
| 1 | SESTALLOT X | R/W | R/W | 1 | Send STALL If set, STALL will be returned to the IN transaction. S/W is allowed to set or clear this bit. H/W clears this bit when SETUP transaction ends with ACK. H/W sets this bit when STALL is returned to any EP0 transaction. | | | |
| 2 | DTOG0TX | R/W | R | 1 | Data Toggle Bit Update by H/W to indicate the data toggle bit for current USB transaction. | | | |
| 3 | Reserved | | | | | | | |
| 4 | ACKSTSOTX | R/W | R | 0 | ACK Status Set by H/W when a transaction is completed with ACK handshake. This bit will be updated automatically at the next valid transaction (ends with ACK or STALL). | | | |
| 5 | STALLSTS 0TX | R/W | R | 0 | STALL Status Set by H/W when a transaction is completed with STALL handshake. This bit will be updated automatically at the next valid transaction (ends with ACK or STALL). | | | |
| 6 | ERRSTSOTX | R/W | R | 0 | Error Status Set by H/W to indicate either USB PID error, CRC error, bit stuffing error or no data phase from USB host occur. This bit will be updated automatically at the next valid transaction (ends with ACK or STALL) or when SETUPOW (EPORXTK Register) is set. | | | |
| 7 | CDTOG0TX | R/W0C | W | 0 | Clear endpoint Toggle. When S/W writes 1 to this bit will clear the DTOG bit which is in the same register. | | | |

9.6.10 Endpoint 0 TX Command/Status Register - EP0TXCSR (0x1D8)



9.6.11 Endpoint X Command/Status Register – EP1/2/3CSR (0x1D9 ~ 0x1DB)

Endpoint 1 command/status Register (EP1CSR)

Endpoint 2 command/status Register (EP2CSR)

| Endpoint 3 command/status F | Reaister (| (EP3CSR) |
|-----------------------------|------------|----------|
| Enapoint o communa clatao i | togiotor y | |

| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|----------|-----|-----|----|--|
| 0 | RXTXENX | | | 0 | RX Enable (Bulk Out) Set by S/W to enable rx USB data. USB data will be written to FIFO and ACK will be returned if the bit "SESTALL" is not set. Cleared by H/W to indicate transaction ends with ACK or STALL. If this bit is 0,USB data will be discarded and NAK will be returned. TX Enable (Interrupt In / Bulk In) Set by S/W to enable tx USB data. USB data Is ready in the FIFO and will be sent to USB bus if the bit "SESTALL" is not set. S/W should write data then byte count the enable tx. Cleared by H/W when the IN transaction ends with ACK or STALL. If the transaction ends with ACK, the |
| | | | | | following USB transaction will be returned with NAK if the bit "SESTALL" is not set. The register will be reset by USB reset or S/W reset. |
| 1 | SESTALLX | R/W | R/W | 1 | Send STALL If set, STALL will be returned for the transaction. S/W is allowed to set or clear this bit. |
| 2 | DTOGX | R/W | R | 0 | Data Toggle Bit (Interrupt IN / Interrupt OUT / Bulk IN / Bulk OUT) Update by H/W to indicate the data toggle bit for current USB transaction. |
| 3 | DTOGERRX | R/W | R | 0 | Data Toggle Error (Interrupt OUT / Bulk OUT) Reserved (Interrupt In / Bulk In) Set by H/W to indicate toggle error occurs. Cleared when S/W writes a 0 which clears the EPn OUT event interrupt status. |
| 4 | ACKSTSX | R/W | R | 0 | ACK Status Set by H/W when a transaction is completed with ACK handshake. This bit will be updated automatically at the next valid transaction (ends with ACK or STALL). |



| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|-----------|-------|-----|----|--|
| 5 | STALLSTSX | R/W | R | 0 | STALL Status Set by H/W when a transaction is completed with STALL handshake. This bit will be updated automatically at the next valid transaction (ends with ACK or STALL). |
| 6 | ERRSTSX | R/W | R | 0 | Error Status Set by H/W to indicate either USB PID error, CRC error, bit stuffing error, time out without handshake response from USB host (for IN transaction) or no data phase from USB host occur (OUT transaction). This bit will be updated automatically at the next valid transaction (ends with ACK or STALL). |
| 7 | CDTOGX | R/W0C | W | 0 | Clear endpoint Toggle 13 S/W writes 1 to this bit will clear the DTOG bit which in the same register. |

The following table lists the meaning in the EPXCSR for different Endpoint-Type:

| Bit | Interrupt IN | Interrupt OUT | Bulk IN | Bulk OUT | |
|-----|--------------|---------------|-------------|-------------|--|
| 0 | RXTXEN | RXTXEN | RXTXEN | RXTXEN | |
| 0 | (TX Enable) | (RX Enable) | (TX Enable) | (RX Enable) | |
| 1 | SESTALL | SESTALL | SESTALL | SESTALL | |
| 2 | DTOG | DTOG | DTOG | DTOG | |
| 3 | Reserved | DTOGERR | Reserved | DTOGERR | |
| 4 | ACKSTS | ACKSTS | ACKSTS | ACKSTS | |
| 5 | STALLSTS | STALLSTS | STALLSTS | STALLSTS | |
| 6 | ERRSTS | ERRSTS | ERRSTS | ERRSTS | |
| 7 | CDTOG | CDTOG | CDTOG | CDTOG | |

9.6.12 Endpoint 0 RX Count Register - EP0RXCTR (0x1DC)

| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|----------|-----|-----|----|--|
| 6-0 | EP0RXCT | R/W | R | 0 | RX Byte Count When receive enable is set to 1, this field specifies the receive byte counts in the receive FIFO. This register will be reset by USB reset or S/W reset. |
| 7 | Reserved | | | | |



9.6.13 Endpoint 0 TX Count Register - EP0TXCTR (0x1DD)

| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|----------|-----|-----|----|---|
| 6-0 | EP0TXCT | R | R/W | 0 | TX Byte Count When transmit enable is set to 1, this field specifies the transmit byte counts in the transmit FIFO. The H/W always accesses the FIFO from Address 0. This register will be reset by USB reset or S/W reset. |
| 7 | Reserved | | | | |

9.6.14 Endpoint X Count Register – EP1/2/3CTR (0x1DE ~ 0x1E0)

Endpoint 1 count Register (EP1CTR)

Endpoint 2 count Register (EP2CTR)

Endpoint 3 count Register (EP3CTR)

| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|----------|-----|-----|----|---|
| 6-0 | EPXCT | R/W | R/W | 0 | RX Byte Count (Bulk Out) When receive enable is set to 1, this field specifies the receive byte counts in the receive FIFO. TX Byte Count (Interrupt In / Bulk In) When transmit enable is set to 1, this field specifies the transmit byte counts in the transmit FIFO. The H/W always accesses the FIFO from Address 0. This register will be reset by USB reset or S/W reset. |
| 7 | Reserved | | | | |

9.6.15 Endpoint 0 RX Data Register - EP0RXDAR (0x1E1)

| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|-------|-----|-----|----|---|
| 7-0 | EP0RX | R/W | R | 0 | RX Data Receive FIFO data will be read by S/W by reading this register. |

9.6.16 Endpoint 0 TX Data Register - EP0TXDAR (0x1E2)

| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|-------|-----|-----|----|---|
| 7-0 | EP0TX | R | W | 0 | TX Data When S/W writes data to this register, it will be written to transmit FIFO. |





9.6.17 Endpoint X Data Register – EP1/2/3DAR (0x1E3 ~ 0x1E5)

Endpoint 1 Data Register (EP1DAR)

Endpoint 2 Data Register (EP2DAR)

Endpoint 3 Data Register (EP3DAR)

| RX Data (Bulk Out) Receive FIFO data will be read by S/W by re | |
|--|--|
| 7-0 EPXD R/W R or W 0 this register. TX Data (Interrupt In / Bulk In) When S/W writes data to this register, it will be written to the transmit FIFO. | |

9.6.18 Hub Global State Register – HGSR (0x1E6)

| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|----------|-----|-----|----|--|
| 0 | OVCM | R | R/W | 1 | Overcurrent Sensing Mode 0=Global overcurrent sensing 1=Individual overcurrent sensing |
| 1 | PWRS/W | R | R/W | 1 | Power switching 0=No Power switching 1=power switching |
| 2 | PWRS/WM | R | R/W | 1 | Power switching Mode 0=Ganged power switching 1=Per port power switching |
| 3 | PWRM | R | R/W | 1 | Power Mode 0=Bus-powered 1=Self-powered |
| 4 | RMWUPEN | R | R/W | 1 | 0=Remote Wake-up is disable 1=Remote Wake-up is enable |
| 5 | CONFG | R | R/W | 0 | 0 = Not configured or Set configuration zero 1= Set configuration nonzero |
| 7-6 | Reserved | | | | |



| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|-----------|-----|-------|----|--|
| 0 | HINTORX | R/W | R | 0 | HUB EP0 USB RX Event Set by H/W when either SETUP transaction ends with ACK or OUT transaction ends with ACK or STALL. It is also set when SETUPOW (HEP0RXTK Register) bit is set. Needs to check HEP0RXCS Register for details. When S/W clears all the OUT, SETUP and SETUPOW bits in HEP0RXTK Register, this bit will be cleared automatically. |
| 1 | HINTOTX | R/W | R/W0C | 0 | HUB EP0 USB TX Event Set by H/W when IN transaction ends with ACK or STALL. S/W writes 0 will clear this bit, writes 1 no change. Write by H/W gets higher priority if H/W writes and S/W writes occur at the same time. |
| 2 | HINTOIN | R/W | R/W0C | 0 | HUB EP0 USB IN Token Event Set by H/W when a valid IN token is received. S/W writes 0 will clear this bit, writes 1 no change. Write by H/W gets higher priority, if H/W writes and S/W writes occur at the same time. |
| 3 | HINT1 | R/W | R/W0C | 0 | HUB EP1 interrupt Set by H/W when IN transaction ends with ACK or STALL. S/W writes 0 will clear this bit, writes 1 no change. Write by H/W gets higher priority if H/W write and S/W write occur at the same time. |
| 4 | EOF1INT | R/W | R/W0C | 0 | EOF1 interrupt. Asserted 10 clocks before the expected start of a frame. |
| 5 | E0F2INT | R/W | R/W0C | 0 | EOF2 interrupt. Asserted 32 clocks before the expected start of a frame. |
| 6 | SOFINT | R/W | R/W0C | 0 | Start of Frame interrupt. Asserted after the receipt of a valid SOF packet |
| 7 | HPSTSCINT | R/W | R/W0C | 0 | Hub and port status change interrupt. Asserted after any status change of both upstream and downstream port. |

9.6.19 Hub Interrupt Event Register – HINTR (0x1E7)



| 9.6.20 | Hub Interrupt Event Enable Control Register – HINTE |
|--------|---|
| (0x1E8 |) |

| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|-----------------|-----|-----|----|------------------------------------|
| 0 | HINTORXE | R | R/W | 0 | HUB EP0 USB RX Event Enable |
| 1 | HINTOTXE | R | R/W | 0 | HUB EP0 USB TX Event Enable |
| 2 | HINTOINE | R | R/W | 0 | HUB EP0 USB IN Token Event Enable |
| 3 | HINT1E | R | R/W | 0 | HUB EP1 interrupt Enable |
| 4 | EOF1INTE | R | R/W | 0 | EOF1 interrupt Event Enable |
| 5 | E0F2INTE | R | R/W | 0 | EOF2 interrupt Event Enable |
| 6 | SOFINTE | R | R/W | 0 | SOF interrupt Event Enable |
| 7 | HPSTSCINTE | R | R/W | 0 | Port status interrupt Event Enable |

9.6.21 Hub Address Register – HAR (0x1E9)

| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|----------|-----|-----|----|-------------|
| 6-0 | HADDR | R | R/W | 0 | HUB Address |
| 7 | Reserved | | | | |

9.6.22 HUB Endpoint 0 RX Token Register - HEP0RXTR (0x1EA)

| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|----------|-----|-------|----|--|
| 0 | HOUT | R/W | R/W0C | 0 | RX OUT Token Set by H/W to indicate OUT token is received and transaction ends with ACK or STALL. When S/W writes a 0, it will clear this bit, when a 1 is written, no change occurs. |
| 1 | HSETUP | R/W | R/W0C | 0 | RX SETUP Token Set by H/W to indicate SETUP token is received and transaction ends with ACK. When S/W writes a 0, it will clear this bit, when a 1 is written, no change occurs. |
| 2 | HSETUPOW | R/W | R/W0C | 0 | SETUP Overwrite Set by H/W to indicate SETUP token is received when RX FIFO is not empty (no matter it is ended with error or ACK). When S/W writes a 0, it will clear this bit, when a 1 is written, no change occurs. |
| 7-3 | Reserved | | | | |



| 9.6.23 | HUB Endpoint 0 Rx Command/Status Register - |
|--------|---|
| | HEPORXČSR (0x1EB) |

| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|------------------|-------|-----|----|---|
| 0 | HRXENORX | R/W0C | R/W | 1 | RX Enable Set by S/W to enable rx USB data. USB data will be written to FIFO and ACK will be returned if the bit "SESTALL" is not set. Cleared by H/W to indicate that transaction ends with ACK or STALL. If this bit is 0, the USB data will be discarded and NAK will be returned. SETUP packets will be written to FIFO even if this bit is not set and ACK will be returned always. This register will be reset by USB reset or S/W reset. |
| 1 | HSESTAL LORX | R/W | R/W | 1 | Send STALL If set, STALL will be returned to the OUT transaction. S/W is allowed to set or clear this bit. H/W clears this bit when SETUP transaction ends with ACK. H/W sets this bit when STALL is returned to any EP0 transaction. |
| 2 | HDTOG0RX | R/W | R | 0 | Data Toggle Bit Updated by H/W to indicate the data toggle bit for current USB transaction. |
| 3 | HDTOGER R0RX | R/W | R | 0 | Data Toggle Error Set by H/W to indicate toggle error occur. Cleared by S/W when writing a 0 that clears the EP0 RX event interrupt status. |
| 4 | HACKSTS 0RX | R/W | R | 0 | ACK Status Set by H/W when a transaction is completed with ACK handshake. This bit will be updated automatically at the next valid transaction (ends with ACK or STALL). |
| 5 | HSTALLS TSORX | R/W | R | 0 | STALL Status Set by H/W when a transaction is completed with STALL handshake. his bit will be updated automatically at the next valid transaction (ends with ACK or STALL). |
| 6 | HERRSTS 0RX | R/W | R | 0 | Error Status Set by H/W to indicate either USB PID error, CRC error, bit stuffing error or no data phase from USB host occur. This bit will be updated automatically at the next valid transaction (ends with ACK or STALL) or when SETUPOW (EP0RXTK Register) is set. |
| 7 | HCDTOG0 RX | R/W0C | W | 0 | Clear endpoint Toggle. When S/W writes a 1 to this bit, it will clear the DTOG bit which is in the same register. |



| 9.6.24 | HUB Endpoint 0 TX Command/Status Register - |
|--------|---|
| | HEPOTXCSR (0x1EC) |

| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|------------------|-------|-----|----|--|
| 0 | HTXEN0TX | R/W0C | R/W | 0 | TX Enable Set by S/W to enable TX USB data. USB data Is ready in the FIFO and will be sent to USB bus if the bit "SESTALL" is not set. S/W should write data then byte count the enable TX. Cleared by H/W in two cases: (1) Indicate IN transaction ends with ACK or STALL. (2) After SETUP transaction ends with ACK. This register will be reset by USB reset or S/W reset. |
| 1 | HSESTALL0 TX | R/W | R/W | 1 | Send STALL If set, STALL will be returned to the IN transaction. S/W is allowed to set or clear this bit. H/W clears this bit when SETUP transaction ends with ACK. H/W sets this bit when STALL is returned to any EP0 transaction. |
| 2 | HDTOG0TX | R/W | R | 1 | Data Toggle Bit Update by H/W to indicate the data toggle bit for current USB transaction. |
| 3 | Reserved | | | | |
| 4 | HACKSTS0 TX | R/W | R | 0 | ACK Status Set by H/W when a transaction is completed with ACK handshake. This bit will be updated automatically at the next valid transaction (ends with ACK or STALL). |
| 5 | HSTALLST S0TX | R/W | R | 0 | STALL Status Set by H/W when a transaction is completed with STALL handshake. This bit will be updated automatically at the next valid transaction (ends with ACK or STALL). |
| 6 | HERRSTS0 TX | R/W | R | 0 | Error Status Set by H/W to indicate either USB PID error, CRC error, bit stuffing error or no data phase from USB host occur. This bit will be updated automatically at the next valid transaction (ends with ACK or STALL) or when SETUPOW (EP0RXTK Register) is set. |
| 7 | HCDTOG0TX | R/W0C | W | 0 | Clear endpoint Toggle. S/W writes 1 to this bit will clear the DTOG bit which in the same register. |



9.6.25 HUB Endpoint 1 TX Command/Status Register -HEP1TXCSR (0x1ED)

| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|------------------|-------|-----|----|--|
| 0 | HTXEN1TX | R/W0C | R/W | 0 | TX Enable Set by S/W to enable TX USB data. The USB data is ready in the FIFO and will be sent to USB bus if the bit "SESTALL" is not set. S/W should write data then byte count the enable TX. Cleared by H/W when the IN transaction ends with ACK or STALL. If the transaction ends with ACK, the following USB transaction will be returned with NAK if the bit "SESTALL" is not set. The register will be reset by USB reset or S/W reset. |
| 1 | HSTALL1TX | R/W | R/W | 1 | Send STALL If set, STALL will be returned to the OUT transaction. S/W is allowed to set or clear this bit. H/W clears this bit when SETUP transaction ends with ACK. H/W sets this bit when STALL is returned to any EP0 transaction. |
| 2 | HDTOG1TX | R/W | R | 0 | Data Toggle Bit Update by H/W to indicate the data toggle bit for current USB transaction. |
| 3 | Reserved | | | | |
| 4 | HACKSTS1 TX | R/W | R | 0 | ACK Status Set by H/W when a transaction is completed with ACK handshake. This bit will be updated automatically at the next valid transaction (ends with ACK or STALL). |
| 5 | HSTALLST S1TX | R/W | R | 0 | STALL Status Set by H/W when a transaction is completed with STALL handshake. This bit will be updated automatically at the next valid transaction (ends with ACK or STALL). |
| 6 | HERRSTS1 TX | R/W | R | 0 | Error Status Set by H/W to indicate either USB PID error, CRC error, bit stuffing error or no data phase from USB host occur. This bit will be updated automatically at the next valid transaction (ends with ACK or STALL) or when SETUPOW (EP0RXTK Register) is set. |
| 7 | HCDTOG1 TX | R/W0C | W | 0 | Clear endpoint Toggle. S/W writes a 1 to this bit to clear the DTOG bit which is in the same register. |



| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|----------|-----|-----|----|--|
| 3-0 | HEPORXC | R/W | R | 0 | RX Byte Count When receive enable is set to 1, this field specifies the receive byte counts in the receive FIFO. This register will be reset by USB reset or S/W reset. |
| 7-4 | Reserved | | | | |

9.6.27 HUB Endpoint 0 TX count Register - HEP0TXCTR (0x1EF)

| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|----------|-----|-----|----|---|
| 3-0 | HEP0TXC | R | R/W | 0 | TX Byte Count When transmit enable is set to 1, this field specifies the transmit byte counts in the transmit FIFO. H/W always accesses the FIFO from Address 0. This register will be reset by USB reset or S/W reset. |
| 7-4 | Reserved | | | | |

9.6.28 HUB Endpoint 0 RX Data Register - HEP0RXDAR (0x1F0)

| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|-------|-----|-----|----|---|
| 7-0 | DATA | R/W | R | 0 | RX Data Receive FIFO data will be read by S/W by reading this register. |

9.6.29 HUB Endpoint 0 TX Data Register - HEP0TXDAR (0x1F1)

| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|-------|-----|-----|----|---|
| 7-0 | DATA | R | W | 0 | TX Data When S/W writes data to this register, it will be written to transmit FIFO. |

9.6.30 HUB Endpoint 1 TX Data Register - HEP1TXDAR (0x1F2)

| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|----------|-----|-----|----|----------------------|
| 0 | HSTSC | R | W | 0 | Hub Status Change |
| 1 | HSTSCP1 | R | W | 0 | Port 1 Status Change |
| 2 | HSTSCP2 | R | W | 0 | Port 2 Status Change |
| 3 | HSTSCP3 | R | W | 0 | Port 3 Status Change |
| 4 | HSTSCP4 | R | W | 0 | Port 4 Status Change |
| 7-5 | Reserved | | | | |



| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|----------|-------|-----|----|--|
| 2-0 | HPADDR | R | R/W | 0 | HUB Port Address. These bit defines which port is being addressed for the command defined by HPCON. Bit 2 Bit 1 Bit 0 Port Addressed 0 0 1 Port 1 0 1 0 Port 2 0 1 1 Port 3 1 0 0 Port 4 |
| 5-3 | HPCON | R | R/W | 0 | Encoded HUB Port Control Command. These bits are set and cleared by firmware upon receipt of a Host request. Bit 5 Bit 4 Bit 3 Action 0 0 0 SetPortFeature (PORT_SUSPEND) 0 1 SetPortFeature (PORT_RESET) 0 1 0 SetPortFeature (PORT_POWER) 0 1 1 ClearPortFeature (PORT_ENABLE) 1 0 0 ClearPortFeature (PORT_SUSPEND) 1 0 1 ClearPortFeature (PORT_SUSPEND) 1 0 1 ClearPortFeature (PORT_POWER) 1 1 0 Unused 1 1 1 Unused |
| 6 | Reserved | | | | |
| 7 | CMDVLD | R/WOC | W | 0 | Hub Port Command Valid It is set by the S/W when any port command is received from the host. It is cleared by the H/W. |

9.6.31 HUB Port Control Register – HPCONR (0x1F3)



| | | | | .09 | |
|-----|----------|-----|-----|-----|--|
| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
| 0 | DMSTATE1 | R/W | R | 0 | HUB Port 1 DM state: Embedded function Value of DM at last EOF. Set and cleared by hardware at EOF2. |
| 1 | DPSTATE1 | R/W | R | 0 | HUB Port 1 DP state: Embedded function Value of DP at last EOF. Set and cleared by hardware at EOF2. |
| 2 | DMSTATE2 | R/W | R | 0 | HUB Port 2 DM state: Downstream Port 1 Value of DM at last EOF. Set and cleared by hardware at EOF2. |
| 3 | DPSTATE2 | R/W | R | 0 | HUB Port 2 DP state: Downstream Port 1 Value of DP at last EOF. Set and cleared by hardware at EOF2. |
| 4 | DMSTATE3 | R/W | R | 0 | HUB Port 3 DM state: Downstream Port 2 Value of DM at last EOF. Set and cleared by hardware at EOF2. |
| 5 | DPSTATE3 | R/W | R | 0 | HUB Port 3 DP state: Downstream port 2 Value of DP at last EOF. Set and cleared by hardware at EOF2. |
| 6 | DMSTATE4 | R/W | R | 0 | HUB Port 4 DM state: Downstram Port 3 Value of DM at last EOF. Set and cleared by hardware at EOF2. |
| 7 | DPSTATE4 | R/W | R | 0 | HUB Port 4 DP state: Downstream Port 3 Value of DP at last EOF. Set and cleared by hardware at EOF2. |

9.6.32 HUB Port State Register – HPSTAR (0x1F4)

9.6.33 Hub Status Register – HSR (0x1F5)

| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|----------|-----|-------|----|---|
| 0 | LPS | R/W | R | 0 | Hub Local Power Status 0=Local Power supply is good 1=Local Power supply is lost (inactive) |
| 1 | OVI | R/W | R | 0 | Overcurrent Indicator 0=No overcurrent condition exist 1=An overcurrent condition exist |
| 2 | LPSC | R/W | R/W0C | 0 | Hub Local Power Status Change 0=No change has occurred on the Local Power Status 1=Local Power Status has changed |
| 3 | OVIC | R/W | R/W0C | 0 | Overcurrent Indicator Change 0=No change has occurred on the overcurrent Indicator 1=Overcurrent Indicator has changed |
| 7-4 | Reserved | | | | |



9.6.34 Hub Port X Status Register – HPSR1/2/3/4 (0x1F6 ~ 0x1F9)

Hub Port 1 Status Register (HPSR1)

Hub Port 2 Status Register (HPSR2)

Hub Port 3 Status Register (HPSR3)

Hub Port 4 Status Register (HPSR4)

| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|----------|-----|-----|----|--|
| 0 | PCSTSX | R/W | R | 0 | Port Connect Status 0=No device is present 1=A device is present on this port |
| 1 | PENSTSX | R/W | R | 0 | Port Enable Status 0=Port is Disable 1=Port is enable |
| 2 | PSUSSTSX | R/W | R | 0 | Port Suspend Status 0=Port not suspended 1=Port suspended |
| 3 | POCIX | R/W | R | 0 | Port Overcurrent Indicator 0=All no overcurrent condition exists on this port 1=An overcurrent condition exists on this port |
| 4 | PRTSTSX | R/W | R | 0 | Port Reset Status 0=Reset signaling not asserted 1=Reset signaling asserted. |
| 5 | PPWRSTSX | R/W | R | 0 | Port Power Status 0=Port is powered OFF 1=Port is powered ON |
| 6 | LSDAX | R/W | R | 0 | Low-Speed Device Attached 0=Full-speed device attached to this port 1=Low-speed device attached to this port |
| 7 | Reserved | | | | |



9.6.35 Hub Port X Status Change Register – HPSCR1/2/3/4 (0x1FA ~ 0x1FD)

Hub Port 1 Status Change Register (HPSCR1)

Hub Port 2 Status Change Register (HPSCR2)

Hub Port 3 Status Change Register (HPSCR3)

Hub Port 4 Status Change Register (HPSCR4)

| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|-----------|-----|-------|----|---|
| 0 | PCSTSCX | R/W | R/W0C | 0 | Port Connect Status Change 0=No change has occurred 1=Current Connect status has changed |
| 1 | PENSTSCX | R/W | R/W0C | 0 | Port Enable Status Change 0=No change has occurred 1=Port Disabled due to port error. |
| 2 | PSUSSTSCX | R/W | R/W0C | 0 | Port Suspend Status Change 0=No change has occurred 1=Resume complete |
| 3 | POCICX | R/W | R/W0C | 0 | Port Overcurrent Indicator Change 0=No change has occurred 1=Port Overcurrent Indicator has changed |
| 4 | PRTSTSCX | R/W | R/W0C | 0 | Port Reset Status Change 0=No change has occurred 1=Reset complete |
| 7-5 | Reserved | | | | |

9.6.36 Frame Number Low-Byte Register – FNLR (0x1FE)

| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|-------|-----|-----|----|------------------------------------|
| 7-0 | FNLR | R/W | R | 0 | Bits 0~7 of Frame Number (11 bits) |

9.6.37 Frame Number High-Byte Register – FNHR (0x1FF)

| Bit | Field | H/W | S/W | DF | Description |
|-----|----------|-----|-----|----|-------------------------------------|
| 2-0 | FNHR | R/W | R | 0 | Bits 8~10 of Frame Number (11 bits) |
| 7-3 | Reserved | | | | |



10 Direction Serial Peripheral Interface (SPI)

10.1 Introduction

The EM77F900 communicates with other devices via SPI (Direction Serial Peripheral Interface) module, as shown in Fig. 10-1. To accomplish communication, SPI uses three wire synchronous protocols: Serial Clock, Serial Data Output, and Serial Data. If the EM77F900 is a master controller, it sends clock through the SCK pin. An 8-bit data is transmitted and received at the same time. If the EM77F900, however, is defined as a slave, its SCK pin could be programmed as an input pin. Data will continue to be shifted on a basis of both the clock rate and the selected edge.

10.2 Features

- 3-wire, full duplex synchronous transceiver
- Operation in either Master mode or Slave mode
- Programmable baud rates of communication
- Programming clock polarity
- Programmable data transmission order
- Interrupt flag available for read buffer full
- Up to 8 MHz (maximum) bit frequency

10.3 Block Diagram

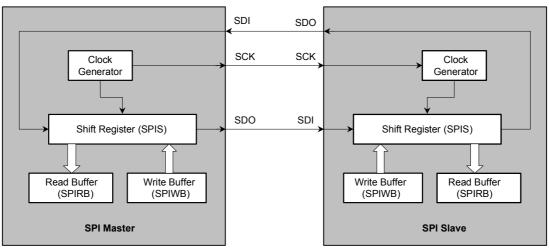


Fig. 10-1 Typical SPI Transceiver Mode



10.4 Transceiver Timing

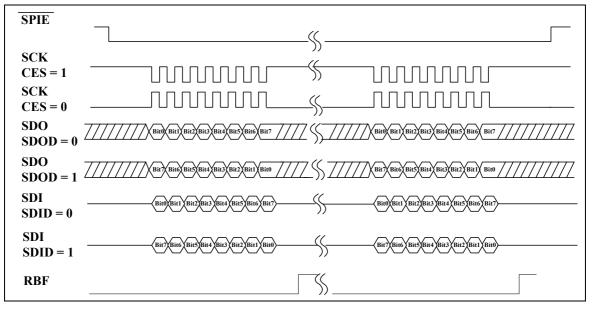


Fig. 10-2 SPI Transceiver Timing Diagram

10.5 SPI Related Registers

As the SPI mode is defined, the related registers of this operation are shown below:

SPIRB (0x1D): Serial Peripheral Interface Read Register

SPIWB (0x1E): Serial Peripheral Interface Write Register

INTF (0X11): Interrupt flag

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|
| ADIF | RBFIF | PWM1IF | PWM0IF | EINT1F | EINT0F | TCCOF | FRCOF |

PRIE (0x80): Peripherals Enable Control

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| SPIE | USBE | BBE | ADE | PWM1E | PWM0E | TCCE | FRCE |

INTE (0X81): Interrupt Enable Control

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|
| GIE | RBFIE | PWM1IE | PWM0IE | EINT1E | EINT0E | TCCOE | FRCOE |

SPIC (0X85): SPI Control

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|---------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| SPI_RBF | CES | SBR2 | SBR1 | SBR0 | SDID | SDOD | SPIS |



10.6 Function Description

10.6.1 Block Diagram Description

The following subsections describe the function of each blocks and signals. Fig. 10.2 depicts how the SPI communication is carried out.

- SDI: Serial Data In
- SCK: Serial clock
- SDO: Serial Data Out
- RBFIF: Set by Buffer Full Detector, and reset in software.
- SPIS: Loads the data in SPIWB register, and begin to shift
- Shift reg.: Shifting byte out and in. The order is defined by bit SDOD. Both the Shift register and the SPIWB registers are loaded at the same time. Once data are written to, the SPIS starts transmission/reception. The received data will be moved to the SPIRB register, as the shifting of the 8-bit data is completed. The RBFIF (Read Buffer Full) flag is equal to 1.
- SPIRB: Read buffer. The buffer will be updated, as the 8-bit shifting is completed. The data must be read before the next reception is finished. The RBF flag is cleared as the SPIRB register is read.
- SPIWB: Write buffer. The buffer will deny any write until the 8-bit shifting is completed. The SPIS bit will be kept in 1 if the communication is still undergoing. This flag must be cleared as the shifting is finished. Users can determine if the next write attempt is available.
- SBR2~SBR0: Programming the clock frequency/rates and sources.
- Edge Select: Selecting the appropriate clock edges by programming the CES bit.

10.6.2 Signal & Pin Description

The three pins, SDI, SDO, and SCK, which are shown in Fig. 10.1, are explained in details as follows:

SDI:

- Serial Data In
- Receive serially
- Defined as high-impedance, if not selected.
- Programmed the same clock rate and the same clock edge to latch on both the master device and slave device.
- The received byte will replace the corresponding transmitted byte.





- The RBFIF bit will be set, as the SPI operation is complete.
- Timing is shown in Fig. 10-2.

SCK:

- Serial Clock.
- Generated by a master device.
- Synchronize the data communication on both the SDI pin and the SDO pin.
- The CES used to select the edge to communicate.
- The SBR0~SBR2 used to determine the baud rate of communication.
- The ES, SBR0, SBR1, and SBR2 bit have no effect in the slave mode.
- Timing is shown in Fig. 10-2

SDO:

- Serial Data Out.
- Transmit serially.
- Programmed the same clock rate and the same clock edge to latch on both the master device and slave device.
- The received byte will replace the transmitted byte.
- The SPIS bit will be reset, as the SPI operation is completed.
- Timing is shown in Fig. 10-2.

11 Analog-to-Digital Converter (ADC)

The analog-to-digital circuitry consists of one 16-to-1 multiplexer, two control registers (ADCIPC and ADCC), two data registers (HADCD and LADCD) and one ADC calculator with 10-bit resolution. The ADC functional block diagram is shown in Fig. 11-1. Port D [7:0] and Port E [7:0] can be selected as either normal digital I/O ports or analog input ports. A maximum of twelve analog input pins can be selected by the ADCIPC register [3:0], ADCPS3 ~ADCPS0 bits. Control bits, ADCIS3 ~ ADCIS0, of ADCIPC [7:4] are then used to select the ADC input channel that will supply analog signal to the ADC calculator. CK2 ~ CK0 control bits are used to select the desired conversion rate. The ADC module, then, utilizes successive approximation to convert the unknown analog signal into a 10-bit digital output value. Finally, the 10-bit result is fed to the HADCD and LADCD registers. If the ADC interrupt is enabled, ADC interrupt flag will be set to "1" as the analog-to-digital conversion is completed.

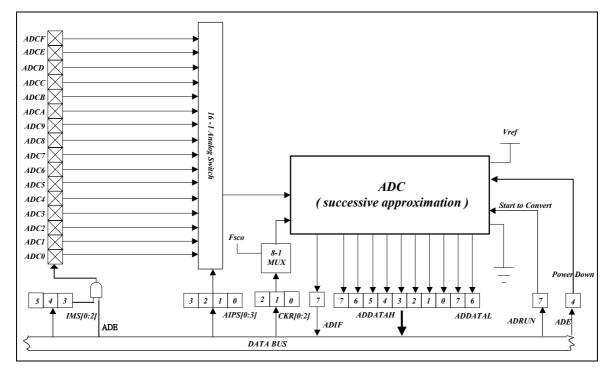


Fig 11-1 Analog-to-Digital Conversion Functional Block Diagram

11.1 ADC Control Registers

As the ADC mode is defined, the related registers of this operation are shown below:

INTF (0X11): Interrupt Flag

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|
| ADIF | RBFIF | PWM1IF | PWM0IF | EINT1F | EINT0F | TCCOF | FRCOF |

ADDATAH (0x1F): ADC 10-bit data

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| ADD9 | ADD8 | ADD7 | ADD6 | ADD5 | ADD4 | ADD3 | ADD2 |

ADDATAL (0x20): ADC 10-bit Data

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| ADD1 | ADD0 | - | - | - | - | - | - |

When the A/D conversion is completed, Bit 9 ~ Bit 2 are loaded to the ADDATAH [7:0] and Bit 1 and Bit 0 are loaded to ADDATAL [7:6]. The ADCRUN bit is cleared, and the ADIF is set.

PRIE (0x80): Peripherals Enable Control

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| SPIE | USBE | BBE | ADE | PWM1E | PWM0E | TCCE | FRCE |



| ADCAIS (0096). ADC analog input pill select and conversion rate select | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|--|--|--|--|
| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 | | | | |
| - | - | IMS2 | IMS1 | IMS0 | CKR2 | CKR1 | CKR0 | | | | |

ADCAIS (0x96): ADC analog input pin select and conversion rate select

IMS2~IMS0 (Bit 2 ~ Bit 4): ADC Configuration Definition Bit

| IMS | PTE7 | PTE6 | PTE5 | PTE4 | PTE3 | PTE2 | PTE1 | PTE0 | PTD7 | PTD6 | PTD5 | PTD4 | PTD3 | PTD2 | PTD1 | PTD0 |
|-----|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|------|
| 000 | А | А | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D |
| 001 | А | А | А | А | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D |
| 010 | А | А | А | А | А | А | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D |
| 011 | А | А | А | А | А | А | А | А | D | D | D | D | D | D | D | D |
| 100 | А | А | А | А | А | А | А | А | А | А | D | D | D | D | D | D |
| 101 | А | А | А | А | А | А | А | А | А | А | А | А | D | D | D | D |
| 110 | А | А | А | А | А | А | А | А | А | А | А | А | А | А | D | D |
| 111 | А | А | А | А | А | А | А | А | А | А | А | А | А | А | А | А |
| ADC | F | Е | D | С | В | А | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |

CKR2~CKR0 (Bit 2 ~ Bit 0): AD conversion Rate Control Bits

| CKR2: CKR1: | | A | D Conversion | Rate Unit: kł | lz |
|---------------------|--------------|----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| CKR2: CKR1: CKR0 | Divided Rate | 6MHz Clock Source | 12MHz Clock Source | 24MHz Clock Source | 48MHz Clock Source |
| 000 | ÷ 2 | 250 | 500 | 1000 | 2000 |
| 001 | ÷ 4 | 125 | 250 | 500 | 1000 |
| 010 | ÷ 8 | 62.5 | 125 | 250 | 500 |
| 011 | ÷ 16 | 31.3 | 62.5 | 125 | 250 |
| 100 | ÷ 32 | 15.6 | 31.3 | 62.5 | 125 |
| 101 | ÷ 64 | 7.8 | 15.6 | 31.3 | 62.5 |
| 110 | ÷ 128 | 3.9 | 7.8 | 15.6 | 31.3 |
| 111 | ÷ 256 | 2.0 | 3.9 | 7.8 | 15.6 |

ADCCR (0x97): ADC Configuration Register

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| ADRUN | ADIE | - | - | AIPS3 | SIPA2 | AIPS1 | AIPS0 |

AIPS0~AIPS3 (Bits 0~3): Analog Input Select

0000 = ADC0;0001 = ADC1;0010 = ADC2;0011 = ADC3;

0100 = ADC4;0101 = ADC5;0110 = ADC6;0111 = ADC7;

1000 = ADC8;1001 = ADC9;1010 = ADCA;1011 = ADCB;

1100 = ADCC;1101 = ADCD;1110 = ADCE;1111 = ADCF;

They only can be changed when the ADIF bit and the ADRUN bit are both LOW.



ADIE (Bit 6): ADC interrupt enable

ADRUN (Bit 7): ADC starts to RUN

- **0** = reset on conversion completion; this bit cannot be reset by software.
- **1** = an A/D conversion is started; this bit can be set by software.

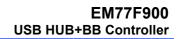
11.2 Programming Steps/Considerations

Follow these steps to obtain data from the ADC:

- 1. Set the ADC function power on (PRIE.ADE).
- 2. Write to the three bits (IMS2:IMS0) on the ADCCR register to define the characteristics of PD and PF: Digital I/O, analog channels, and voltage reference pin.
- 3. Write to the ADCAIS register to configure the ADC module.
 - i Select the ADC input channel (AIPS3: AIPS0)
 - ii Define the ADC conversion clock rate (CKR2: CKR1: CKR0)
- 4. Set the ADC interrupt enable (ADCCR.ADIE). Include "ENI" instruction, if the interrupt function is employed.
- 5. Set the ADRUN bit to 1 to begin sampling.
- 6. Wait for either the interrupt flag to be set or the ADC interrupt to occur.
- 7. Read the conversion data register ADDATAH & ADDATAL.
- 8. Clear the interrupt flag bit (INTF.ADIF).
- 9. For the next conversion, go to Step 2 or Step 3 as required. At least 2Tct is required before the next acquisition starts.

NOTE

To obtain an accurate value, it is necessary to avoid any data transition on the I/O pins during AD conversion.



12 Dual Pulse Width Modulations (PWM0 and PWM1)

12.1 Overview

The EM77F900 has two built-in PWM outputs with 16-bit resolution. Fig.12-1 shows the functional block diagram. A PWM output has a period and a duty cycle, and it keeps the output high. The baud rate of the PWM is the inverse of the period. Fig. 12-2 depicts the relationships between a period and a duty cycle.

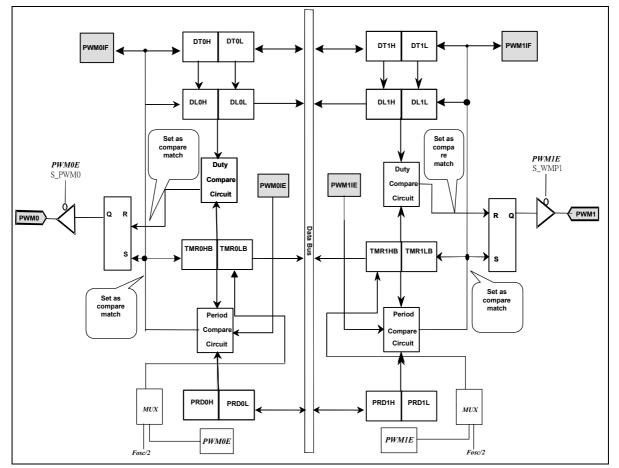
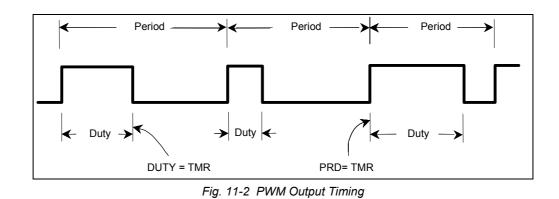


Fig. 11-1 Functional Block Diagram of the Dual PWM





12.2 PWM Control Registers

As the PWM mode is defined, the related registers of this operation are shown below:

INTF (0x11): Interrupt flag

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|
| ADIF | RBFIF | PWM1IF | PWM0IF | EINT1F | EINTOF | TCCOF | FRCOF |

DT0L (0x21): Duty of PWM0 low byte

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| DT07 | DT06 | DT05 | DT04 | DT03 | DT02 | DT01 | DT00 |

DT0H (0x22): Duty of PWM0 high byte

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| DT0F | DT0E | DT0D | DT0C | DT0B | DT0A | DT09 | DT08 |

DL0L (0x25): Duty latch of PWM0 low byte

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| DL07 | DL06 | DL05 | DL04 | DL03 | DL02 | DL01 | DL00 |

DL0H (0x26): Duty latch of PWM0 high byte

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| DL0F | DL0E | DL0D | DL0C | DL0B | DL0A | DL09 | DL08 |

DT1L (0x27): Duty of PWM1 low byte

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| DT17 | DT16 | DT15 | DT14 | DT13 | DT12 | DT11 | DT10 |

DT1H (0x28): Duty of PWM1 high byte

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| DT1F | DT1E | DT1D | DT1C | DT1B | DT1A | DT19 | DT18 |

DL1L (0x2B): Duty latch of PWM1low byte

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| DL17 | DL16 | DL15 | DL14 | DL13 | DL12 | DL11 | DL10 |

DL2H (0x2C): Duty latch of PWM1 high byte

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| DL1F | DL1E | DL1D | DL1C | DL1B | DL1A | DL19 | DL18 |

The PWM duty cycle is defined by writing to the DTX register, and is latched from DTX to DLX while TMRX is cleared. When DLX is equal to TMRX, the PWMX pin is cleared. DTX can be loaded at any time. However, it cannot be latched into DLX until the current value of DLX is equal to TMRX.



The following formula describes how to calculate the PWM duty cycle:

Duty Cycle = (DTX+1) * (2/Fosc)

PRD0L (0x23): Period of PWM0 low byte

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| PRD07 | PRD06 | PRD05 | PRD04 | PRD03 | PRD02 | PRD01 | PRD00 |

PRD0H (0x24): Period of PWM0 high byte

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| PRD0F | PRD0E | PRD0D | PRD0C | PRD0B | PRD0A | PRD09 | PRD08 |

PRD1L (0x29): Period of PWM1 low byte

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| PRD17 | PRD16 | PRD15 | PRD14 | PRD13 | PRD12 | PRD11 | PRD10 |

PRD1H (0x2A): Period of PWM1 high byte

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| PRD1F | PRD1E | PRD1D | PRD1C | PRD1B | PRD1A | PRD19 | PRD18 |

The PWM period is defined by writing to PRDX. When TMRX is equal to PRDX, the following events occur on the next increment cycle:

- TMRX is cleared.
- The PWMX pin is set to 1.
- The PWMX duty cycle is latched from DTPS to DUTY.

| NOTE |
|---|
| The PWMX will not be set, if the duty cycle is 0. |

- The PWMXIF pin is set to 1.
- The following formula describes how to calculate the PWM period:

Period = (PRD +2) * (2/Fsco)

The PWM function must be disabled before a new period is executed. In other words, bit PWMXE has to be reset in advance, if the contents of PRDX are reloaded.

PRIE (0x80): Peripherals enable control

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| SPIE | USBE | BBE | ADE | PWM1E | PWM0E | TCCE | FRCE |

INTE (0x81): Interrupt enable control

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|
| GIE | RBFIE | PWM1IE | PWM0IE | EINT1E | EINT0E | TCCOE | FRCOE |

PWMCR (0x98): PWM control

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|--------|--------|-------|-------|
| - | - | - | - | S_PWM1 | S_PWM0 | - | - |



12.3 PWM Programming Procedures/Steps

- (1) Load PRDX with the PWMX period.
- (2) Load DTX with the PWMX Duty Cycle.
- (3) Enable the interrupt function by setting PWMXIE in the INTE register, if required.
- (4) Set the PWM pin as output by setting PWMCR.S_PWMX.
- (5) Enable the PWM function by setting PWMXE bit in the PRIE register.
- (6) Write the desired new duty to DTX before TMRX is equal to PRDX, then this new DTX will be latched into DLX if various duty cycle is required for the next PWMX operation.
- (7) Clear PWMXE bit and write the desired new period to PRDX, then enable it again if various periods are required for the next PWMX operation.
- (8) Clear the PWMXIF before the next operation if interrupt PWMXIE is employed.

13 Interrupts

13.1 Introduction

The EM77F900 has 20 interrupt sources. By priority, these interrupts are classified into three levels, namely; peripherals, wireless modem, and USB, as described in the following texts:

The interrupt status registers record the interrupt requests in the corresponding control bits in the interrupt control registers. The global interrupt (GIE) is enabled by the ENI instruction and is disabled by the DISI instruction. The interrupt flag bit must be cleared by instructions before leaving the interrupt service routine to avoid recursive interrupts.

The flags in the Interrupt Status Register are set regardless of the status of their corresponding mask bits or the execution of DISI. Note that the logic AND of an interrupt flag and its corresponding interrupt control bit is 1 which makes the program counter point to the right interrupt vector. Refer to Fig. 13-1. The RETI instruction ends the interrupt routine and enables the global interrupt (the execution of ENI).

Before the interrupt subroutine is executed, the contents of ACC, SR, RAMBS0 and ROMPS will be saved by the hardware. After the interrupt service routine is finished, ACC, SR, RAMBS0 and ROMPS will be pushed back.



| No | Mner | nonic | Priority | Vector | Function | Masl | k | Statu | s |
|----|------------------|------------------|----------|--------|---------------------------|--------------|------------|-------------|------------|
| NO | Mask | Status | Phoney | vector | Function | Register | Bit | Register | Bit |
| 1 | KWUAE KWUBE | KWUAIF KWUBIF | 1 | 0x10 | Key Wake Up | 0x82 0x83 | 3~0 All | 0x12 013 | 3~0 All |
| 2 | EINT0E EINT1E | EINT0F EINT1F | 1 | 0x18 | External Interrupt | 0x81 | 2 3 | 0x11 | 2 3 |
| 3 | FRCOE | FRCOF | 1 | 0x20 | FRC Overflow | 0x81 | 0 | 0x11 | 0 |
| 4 | TCCOE | TCCOF | 1 | 0x28 | TCC Overflow | 0x81 | 1 | 0x11 | 1 |
| 5 | RBFIE | RBFIF | 1 | 0x30 | SPI Read Buffer Full | 0x81 | 6 | 0x11 | 6 |
| 6 | ADCIE | ADCIF | 1 | 0x38 | ADC complete | 0x80 | 4 | 0x11 | 7 |
| 7 | PWM0IE PWM1IE | PWM0IF PWM1IF | 1 | 0x40 | PWM period complete | 0x81 | 4 5 | 0x11 | 4 5 |
| 8 | CSDE | CSDF | 2 | 0x48 | Carrier sense interrupt | 0x99 | 7 | 0x30 | 7 |
| 9 | TX_AEE | TX_AEF | 2 | 0x50 | TX FIFO almost empty | 0x99 | 6 | 0x30 | 6 |
| 10 | RX_AFE | RX_AFF | 2 | 0x58 | RX FIFO almost full | 0x99 | 5 | 0x30 | 5 |
| 11 | TX_EMPTY | TX_EMPTYF | 2 | 0x60 | TX FIFO empty | 0x99 | 4 | 0x30 | 4 |
| 12 | RX_OFE | RX_OFF | 2 | 0x68 | RX FIFO overflow | 0x99 | 3 | 0x30 | 3 |
| 13 | LINK_DIS | LINK_DIS | 2 | 0x70 | LINK_DIS interrupt | 0x99 | 2 | 0x30 | 2 |
| 14 | LOCK_OUTE | LOCK_OUTF | 2 | 0x78 | Lock out interrupt | 0x99 | 1 | 0x30 | 1 |
| 15 | LOCK_INE | LOCK_INF | 2 | 0x80 | Lock in interrupt | 0x99 | 0 | 0x30 | 0 |
| 16 | INT0RXE | INT0RXF | 3 | | EP0 USB RX Event | 0x1D2 | 0 | 0x1D1 | 0 |
| 16 | INT0TXE | INT0TXF | 3 | 0x88 | EP0 USB TX Event | 0x1D2 | 1 | 0x1D1 | 1 |
| 16 | INTOINE | INTOINF | 3 | | EP0 USB IN Token Event | 0x1D2 | 2 | 0x1D1 | 2 |
| 17 | INT1E | INT1F | 3 | | EP1 Interrupt | 0x1D2 | 3 | 0x1D1 | 3 |
| 17 | INT2E | INT2F | 3 | 0x90 | EP2 Interrupt | 0x1D2 | 4 | 0x1D1 | 4 |
| 17 | INT3E | INT3F | 3 | | EP3 Interrupt | 0x1D2 | 5 | 0x1D1 | 5 |

In EM77F900, individual interrupt sources have their own interrupt vectors, depicted in the following table:



| No | Mnen | nonic | Driority | Vector | Function | Mas | k | Statu | s |
|----|-----------------|-----------------|----------|--------|--|----------|-----|----------|-----|
| NO | Mask | Status | Priority | Vector | Function | Register | Bit | Register | Bit |
| 18 | RSTINTE | RSTINTF | 3 | | USB Bus Reset Event Detect | 0x1D4 | 0 | 0x1D3 | 0 |
| 18 | IDLEINTE | IDLEINTF | 3 | | USB Bus Suspend Event Detect | 0x1D4 | 1 | 0x1D3 | 1 |
| 18 | RUEINTE | RUEINTF | 3 | 0x98 | USB Bus Resume Event Detect | 0x1D4 | 2 | 0x1D3 | 2 |
| 18 | FRWPINTE | FRWPINTF | 3 | | Function Remote Wake-Up Interrupt | 0x1D4 | 3 | 0x1D3 | 3 |
| 19 | HINTORXE | HINTORXF | 3 | | Hub EP0 USB RX Event | 0x1E8 | 0 | 0x1E7 | 0 |
| 19 | HINTOTXE | HINT0TXF | 3 | 0xA0 | Hub EP0 USB TX Event | 0x1E8 | 1 | 0x1E7 | 1 |
| 19 | HINTOINE | HINTOINF | 3 | UXAU | Hub EP0 USB IN Token Event | 0x1E8 | 2 | 0x1E7 | 2 |
| 19 | HINT1E | HINT1F | 3 | | Hub EP1 Interrupt | 0x1E8 | 3 | 0x1E7 | 3 |
| 20 | EOF1INTE | EOF1INTF | 3 | | EOF1 Interrupt | 0x1E8 | 4 | 0x1E7 | 4 |
| 20 | EOF2INTE | EOF2INTF | 3 | | EOF2 Interrupt | 0x1E8 | 5 | 0x1E7 | 5 |
| 20 | SOFINTE | SOFINTF | 3 | 0XA8 | Start Of Frame Interrupt | 0x1E8 | 6 | 0x1E7 | 6 |
| 20 | HPSTSCINTE | HPSTSCINTF | 3 | | Hub and Port Status Change Interrupt | 0x1E8 | 7 | 0x1E7 | 7 |

The interrupt priority is another useful feature provided by this IC. The latest interrupt, which has the highest priority than the others, will override and hold the currently executed interrupt until the interrupt is finished. Otherwise, the latest interrupt will be in queue right after its all peers.

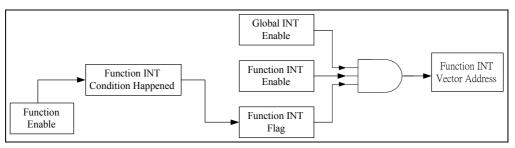


Fig. 13-1 Block Diagram of Interrupts



14 Circuitry of Input and Output Pins

14.1 Introduction

The EM77F900 has six parallel ports, namely, Port A, Port B, Port C, Port D, Port E and Port F which only four least significant bits are available. That is, there are 42 available I/O pins. A control bit defines the configuration of its corresponding pin. Refer to Fig. 3.1 for the Pin Assignment.

The I/O registers, from Port A to Port F, are bidirectional tri-state I/O ports. The I/O ports can be defined as "input" or "output" pins by the I/O control registers (IOCA, IOCB, IOCD, IOCE and IOCF) under program control. The I/O registers and I/O control registers are both readable and writable. Note that the source is different between the reading path of input and output pin while reading the I/O port.

15 Timer/Counter System

15.1 Introduction

The EM77F900 provides two timer modules: 8-bit TCC (Time Clock/Counter), and 16-bit FRC (Free Run Counter). The clock sources of TCC come from one of the instruction cycle and low frequency oscillator (ERC). The clock source of FRC is from either instruction cycle or low frequency oscillator (ERC).

15.2 Time Clock Counter (TCC)

An 8-bit counter is available as prescaler for the TCC. The prescaler ratio is determined by the PS0~PS2 bits. When in TCC mode, the prescaler is cleared each time an instruction writes to the TCC.

- TCC is an 8-bit timer/counter. If the TCC signal source is from the system clock, TCC will be incremented by 1 in every instruction cycle (without prescaler).
- If the TCC signal source is from the ERC clock input, TCC will be incremented by 1 on every falling edge or rising edge of the TCC pin.
- The prescaler counter (PRC) can be read from Address 0x0F. In the other words, the combination of TCC and PRC can be used as a 16-bit counter without prescaler.



15.2.1 Block Diagram of TCC

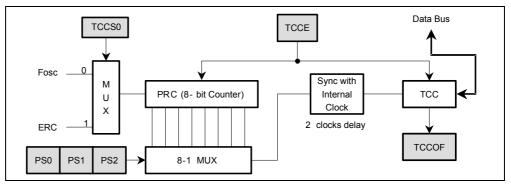


Fig. 14-1 Function Block Diagram of TCC

15.2.2 TCC Control Registers

As the TCC mode is defined, the related registers involved in this operation are shown below:

PRC (0x0F): Prescaler counter

TCC (0x10): Timer clock/counter

INTF (0x11): Interrupt flag.

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|
| ADIF | RBFIF | PWM1IF | PWM0IF | EINT1F | EINT0F | TCCOF | FRCOF |

PRIE (0x80): Peripherals enable control

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| SPIE | USBE | BBE | ADE | PWM1E | PWM0E | TCCE | FRCE |

INTE (0x81): Interrupt enable control

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|
| GIE | RBFIE | PWM1IE | PWM0IE | EINT1E | EINT0E | TCCOE | FRCOE |

TCCC (0x93): Timer clock/counter control

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| - | - | - | - | TCCS0 | PS2 | PS1 | PS0 |



15.2.3 TCC Programming Procedures/Steps

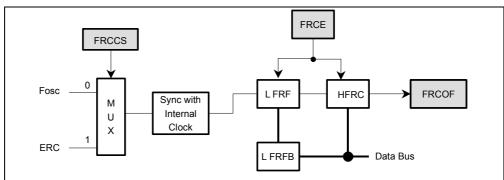
- (1) Load TCCC with the prescaler and TCC clock source.
- (2) Load TCC with the TCC overflow period.
- (3) Enable the interrupt function by setting TCCOE in the INTE register, if required.
- (4) Enable the TCC function by setting the TCCE bit in the PRIE register.
- (5) Wait for either the interrupt flag to be set (TCCOF) or the TCC interrupt to occur.
- (6) The following formula describes how to calculate the TCC overflow period:

$$TCCTimer = (0 \times 100 - TCC) \times \Pr escaler \left(\frac{1}{ClockSource}\right)$$

where Clock Source = Fosc or ERC

15.3 Free Run Counter

Dual 8-bit counters, high byte register and low byte register, make up the 16-bit software programmable counter. The driving clock source is either the system clock divided by 2 or the low frequency oscillator. A read of the low byte register allows full control of the corresponding timer function. On the contrary, accessing a high byte register will inhibit the specific timer function until the corresponding low byte is read as well.



15.3.1 Block Diagram of FRC

Fig. 14-2 Function Block Diagram of Timer 1



15.3.2 FRC Control Registers

As the FRC mode is defined, the related registers of this operation are shown below:

INTF (0x11): Interrupt flag.

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|
| ADIF | RBFIF | PWM1IF | PWM0IF | EINT1F | EINT0F | TCCOF | FRCOF |

LFRC (0x1A): Least significant byte of 16-bit free run counter.

HFRC (0x1B): Most significant byte of 16-bit free run counter.

LFRCB (0x1C): Least significant byte buffer of 16-bit free run counter.

PRIE (0x80): Peripherals enable control

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| SPIE | USBE | BBE | ADE | PWM1E | PWM0E | TCCE | FRCE |

INTE (0x81): Interrupt enable control

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|--------|-------|-------|
| GIE | RBFIE | PWM1IE | PWM0IE | EINT1E | EINT0E | TCCOE | FRCOE |

FRCC (0x94): Free run counter control.

| Bit 7 | Bit 6 | Bit 5 | Bit 4 | Bit 3 | Bit 2 | Bit 1 | Bit 0 |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| - | - | - | - | - | - | - | FRCCS |

15.3.3 FRC Programming Procedures/Steps

- (1) Load LFRCB with the FRC overflow period low byte.
- (2) Load HFRC with the TCC overflow period high byte. Then LFRC will load with the LFRCB automatically.
- (3) Enable interrupt function by setting FRCOE in the INTE register, if required.
- (4) Enable FRC function by set FRCE bit in the PRIE register.
- (5) Wait for either the interrupt flag to be set (FRCOF) or the FRC interrupt to occur.
- (6) An access of low byte of a 16-bit counter receives the count value at the moment of the read. However, the contents of low byte will transfer to the buffer, the LFRCB register, if a high byte is read first. The value in the LFRCB register remains unchanged until the corresponding low byte is read.
- (7) The following formula describes how to calculate the FRC overflow period:

$$FRCTimer = (0 \times 100 - HFRC : LFRC) \times \left(\frac{1}{ClockSource}\right)$$

where Clock Source = Fosc or ERC



16 Reset and Wake Up

16.1 Reset

The reset can be caused by one of the following:

- (1) Power-on reset
- (2) /RESET pin input "low", or
- (3) Watchdog timer time-out (if enabled)

The device will remain in a reset condition for a period of 10-bit external RC ripple counter (one oscillator start-up timer period) after the reset is detected. The initial Address is 000h.

16.2 The Status of RST, T, and P of the STATUS Register

A reset condition can be caused by the following events:

- (1) A power-on condition (external);
- (2) A high-low-high pulse on the /RESET pin (external); and
- (3) Watchdog timer time-out (internal).

The values of bits RST, T and P, listed in Table 17.1 can be used to check how the processor wakes up.

| Condition | RST | Т | Р |
|---|-----|----|----|
| Power on | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| WDTC instruction | *P | 1 | *P |
| WDT timeout | *P | 0 | *P |
| SLEP instruction | *P | *P | 0 |
| Wake-up on a pin change during sleep mode | 1 | 1 | 0 |

*P: Previous status before reset

Table 15.1 Values of RST, T and P after a reset



16.3 System Set-up (SSU) Time

In order to have a successful start up, System Set-up Time (SSU) is employed to guarantee a stable clock for IC operation. It is made up of two delay sources:

- (1) External RC Oscillation Set-up Delay (IRCOSUD): External RC oscillation shared with a watchdog timer divided by a 10-bit ripple counter. The RC delay controlled by bit IRCDE in Code Option is optional.
- (2) Main Oscillation Set-up Delay (MOSUD): A 10-bit ripple counter is used to filter unstable main clocks at the beginning of power-on before the chip starts to run. This delay is performed right after IRCOSUD, if enabled.

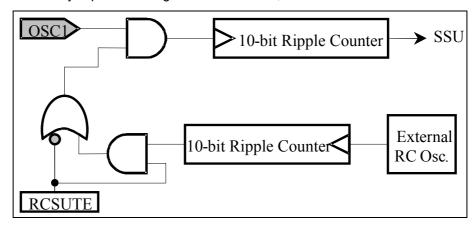


Fig. 15-1 System Set up Time

16.4 Wake-up Procedure on Power-on Reset

Power-on Voltage Detector (POVD) will allow the VDD whose value is over the default threshold voltage (2.0 V for the EM77F900) to enter the IC, and the SSU delay starts.

The following three cases may be taken into consideration:

- (1) /RESET pin goes high with VDD at the same time. In hardware, this pin and VDD are tied together. The internal reset will remain low until the SSU delay is over.
- (2) /RESET pin goes high during the SSU delay. It is similar to Case 1. The IC will start to operate when the SSU delay is over.

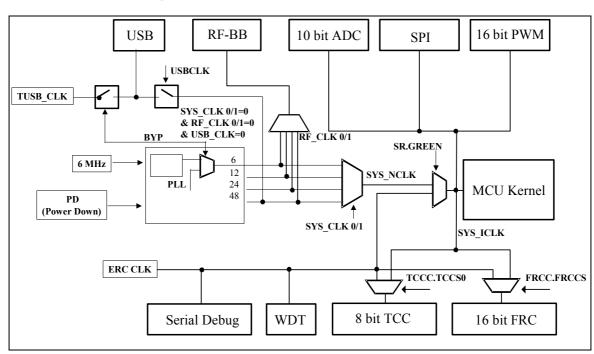
/RESET pin goes high after an SSU delay. The EM77F900 will start program execution immediately.



17 Oscillators

17.1 Introduction

The EM77F900 provides three main oscillators: One high frequency crystal oscillator (connected to OSCI and OSCO), external RC, and four PLL (Phase Lock Loop) Outputs. Versatile combinations of oscillation are provided for a wide range of applications. On-chip clock sources can be either dual clocks or single clock.



17.2 Clock Signal Distribution

Fig. 16-1 Clock Tours

17.3 PLL Oscillator

The Phase-locked loop (PLL) technology is employed to produce four different frequencies: 6 MHz, 12MHz, 24MHz and 48 MHz (external 6MHz crystal). 6 MHz is the system clock source and 48 MHz is USB device and Hub clock source only. PLL is enabled except when entering Green and Sleep mode.



18 Low-Power Mode

18.1 Introduction

The EM77F900 has two power-saving modes, green mode and sleep mode. Figure 18-1 shows the mode change diagram.

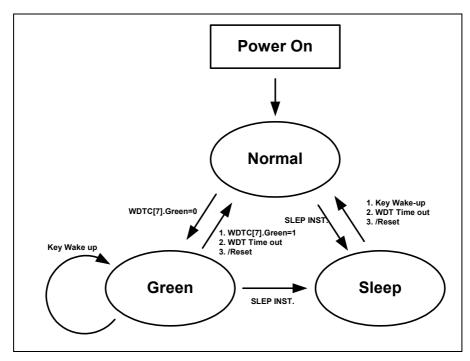


Fig. 17-1 Three Mode State

18.2 Green Mode

The "GREEN" bit of WDTC [7] register is the only control bit used for mode switching, between normal mode and green mode. Its initial value is "0", normal mode. When "GREEN" bit is written with a 1, The MCU will switch to green mode from normal mode. In contrast, the MCU will go back to normal mode when the "GREEN" bit is written from 1 to 0. During green mode, the main oscillator will be turned off. The MCU and all the peripherals are driven by the external RC oscillator - ERC.

Once RF peripheral is functional and then switched into green mode, the clock source of all other peripherals, except PLL, will be provided by ERC. PLL will keep running as RF circuit's clock source.



18.3 Sleep Mode

The execution of "SLEP" instruction will turn the whole chip into Sleep mode. The main clock will be shut down. The ERC oscillator is halted also if the watchdog function is disabled. All registers, memory and I/O port remain in their previous states during sleep mode. The overflow of the watchdog timer driven by ERC will generate a reset to resume normal operation. Key Wake up (KWU) interrupt and /RESET pin are other methods to exit sleep mode. It is essential to wait for stable Oscillation start up time before normal operation. The stabilizing time is XXX.

19 Instruction Description

| Туре | | Instructi | on Binar | У | Mnemonic | Operation | Status Affected | Cycles |
|-------------------|------|-----------|----------|------|----------|--|--------------------|--------|
| | 0000 | 0000 | 0000 | 0000 | NOP | No operation | None | 1 |
| | 0000 | 0000 | 0000 | 0001 | WDTC | WDT ← 0 | None | 1 |
| | 0000 | 0000 | 0000 | 0010 | RET | PC ← (Top of Stack) | None | 1 |
| 0 | 0000 | 0000 | 0000 | 0011 | RETI | PC ← (Top of Stack); Enable Interrupt | None | 1 |
| System Control | 0000 | 0000 | 0000 | 0100 | SLEP | WDT ← 0 Stop oscillator | None | 1 |
| | 0000 | 0000 | 0000 | 0101 | ENI | Enable Interrupt | None | 1 |
| | 0000 | 0000 | 0000 | 0110 | DISI | Disable Interrupt | None | 1 |
| | 0000 | 0000 | 0000 | 0111 | DAA | Decimal Adjust A | С | 1 |
| | 0000 | 0000 | 0000 | 1000 | (TRAP) | ICE use | None | 1 |
| | 1010 | 0000 | rrrr | rrrr | TBRDP r | r ← ROM[(TABPT[15:1])] TABPT ← TABPT+1 | None | 2 |
| | 1010 | 0001 | rrrr | rrrr | TBRD r | $r \leftarrow ROM[(TABPT[15:1])]$ | None | 2 |
| | 1010 | 0010 | rrrr | rrrr | TBRDM r | r ← ROM[(TABPT[15:1])] TABPT ← TABPT-1 | None | 2 |
| Table Look up | 0000 | 0000 | 0000 | 1010 | TBRDP A | $A \leftarrow ROM[(TABPT[15:1])]$ TABPT $\leftarrow TABPT+1$ | None | 2 |
| LOOK UP | 0000 | 0000 | 0000 | 1011 | TBRD A | A ← ROM[(TABPT[15:1])] | None | 2 |
| | 0000 | 0000 | 0000 | 1100 | TBRDM A | $A \leftarrow \text{ROM}[(\text{TABPT}[15:1])]$ TABPT $\leftarrow \text{TABPT-1}$ | None | 2 |
| | 0011 | 1101 | 0000 | 0010 | TBL | R2 ← R2+A | C, DC, Z | 1 |
| | 1010 | 1011 | kkkk | kkkk | RETL #k | $A \leftarrow k$ PC ← [Top of Stack] | None | 1 |

19.1 Instruction Set Summary



| Туре | | Instructi | on Binar | У | Mnemonic | Operation | Status Affected | Cycles |
|---------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--|--------------------|--------|
| | 0000 | 0001 | rrrr | rrrr | OR A, r | A ← A .or. r | Z | 1 |
| | 0000 | 0010 | rrrr | rrrr | OR r, A | r ← r .or. A | Z | 1 |
| | 0000 | 0011 | kkkk | kkkk | OR A, #k | A ← A .or. k | Z | 1 |
| | 0000 | 0100 | Rrrr | rrrr | AND A, r | A ← A .and. r | Z | 1 |
| | 0000 | 0101 | Rrrr | rrrr | AND r, A | r ← r .and. A | Z | 1 |
| | 0000 | 0110 | kkkk | kkkk | AND A, #k | A ← A .and. k | Z | 1 |
| | 0000 | 0111 | Rrrr | rrrr | XOR A, r | A ← A .xor. r | Z | 1 |
| | 0000 | 1000 | rrrr | rrrr | XOR r, A | r ← r .xor. A | Z | 1 |
| | 0000 | 1001 | kkkk | kkkk | XOR A, #k | A ← A .xor. k | Z | 1 |
| | 0000 | 1010 | rrrr | rrrr | COMA r | A ← /r | Z | 1 |
| Logic | 0000 | 1011 | rrrr | rrrr | COM r | r ← /r | Z | 1 |
| | 1011 | 00kk | rrrr | rrrr | RRCA r, #k | [C,r] rotate right k bits to [C,A] | С | 1 |
| | 1011 | 01kk | rrrr | rrrr | RRC r, #k | [C,r] rotate right k bits to [C,r] | С | 1 |
| | 1011 | 10kk | rrrr | rrrr | RLCA r, #k | [C,r] rotate left k bits to [C,A] | С | 1 |
| | 1011 | 11kk | rrrr | rrrr | RLC r, #k | [C,r] rotate left k bits to [C,r] | С | 1 |
| | 0101 | 10kk | rrrr | rrrr | SHRA r, #k | [C,r] shift right k bits to A Insert C into high order bits | None | 1 |
| | 0101 | 11kk | rrrr | rrrr | SHLA r, #k | [C,r] shift left k bits to A Insert C into low order bits | None | 1 |
| | 0001 xxaa | 0bbb aaaa | rrrr aaaa | rrrr aaaa | JBC r,b,addr | If r(b)=0, jump to addr | None | 2/3* |
| | 0001 xxaa | 1bbb aaaa | rrrr aaaa | rrrr aaaa | JBS r,b,addr | If r(b)=1, jump to addr | None | 2/3* |
| Compare | 0101 xxaa | 0010 aaaa | rrrr aaaa | rrrr aaaa | DJZA r,addr | A ←r-1, jump to addr if zero | None | 2/3* |
| Branch | 0101 xxaa | 0011 aaaa | rrrr aaaa | rrrr aaaa | DJZ r,addr | r ←r-1, jump to addr if zero | None | 2/3* |
| | 0101 xxaa | 0100 aaaa | rrrr aaaa | rrrr aaaa | JZA r,addr | A←r+1, jump to addr if zero | None | 2/3* |
| | 0101 xxaa | 0101 aaaa | rrrr aaaa | rrrr aaaa | JZ r,addr | r ←r+1, jump to addr if zero | None | 2/3* |
| Process | 0010 | 0bbb | rrrr | rrrr | BC r,b | r(b) ← 0 | None | 1 |
| | 0010 | 1bbb | rrrr | rrrr | BS r,b | r(b) ← 1 | None | 1 |
| | 0011 | Obbb | rrrr | rrrr | BTG r,b | r(b) ← /r(b) | None | 1 |



EM77F900 USB HUB+BB Controller

| Туре | | Instructio | on Binar | y | Mnemonic | Operation | Status Affected | Cycles |
|------------|------|----------------|-------------|-------------|-----------------|---|--------------------|--------|
| | 0011 | 1000 | rrrr | rrrr | SWAP r | $r(0:3) \leftrightarrow r(4:7)$ | None | 1 |
| | 0011 | 1001 | rrrr | rrrr | SWAPA r | A(4:7) ← r(0:3) A(0:3) ← r(4:7) | None | 1 |
| | 1010 | 1100 | rrrr | rrrr | ZCHK r | $Z \leftarrow 0 \text{ if } r <>0$ $Z \leftarrow 1 \text{ if } r = 0$ | Z | 1 |
| | 0000 | 0000 | 0000 | 1101 | RPT | Single repeat CS times on next TBRD instruction | None | 1 |
| | 1010 | 1111 | rrrr | rrrr | CLR r | r ← 0 | Z | 1 |
| | 0011 | 1100 | rrrr | rrrr | ADD A,r | A ← A+r | C, DC, Z | 1 |
| | 0011 | 1101 | rrrr | rrrr | ADD r,A | r ← r+A | C, DC, Z | 1 |
| | 0011 | 1110 | kkkk | kkkk | ADD A,#k | A ← A+k | C, DC, Z | 1 |
| | 0100 | 0010 | rrrr | rrrr | SUB A,r | A ← r-A | C, DC, Z | 1 |
| Arithmetic | 0100 | 0011 | rrrr | rrrr | SUB r,A | f ← r-A | C, DC, Z | 1 |
| Antimetic | 0100 | 0100 | kkkk | kkkk | SUB A,#k | A ← k-A | C, DC, Z | 1 |
| | 0100 | 1110 | rrrr | rrrr | INCA r | A ← r+1 | C, DC, Z | 1 |
| | 0100 | 1111 | rrrr | rrrr | INC r | r ← r+1 | C, DC, Z | 1 |
| | 0101 | 0000 | rrrr | rrrr | DECA r | A ← r-1 | C, DC, Z | 1 |
| | 0101 | 0001 | rrrr | rrrr | DEC r | r ← r-1 | C, DC, Z | 1 |
| | 1010 | 1000 | rrrr | rrrr | MOV A,r | A ← r | Z | 1 |
| | 1010 | 1001 | rrrr | rrrr | MOV r,A | r ← A | None | 1 |
| Move | 0110 | r2 r2 r2 r2 r2 | r2 r2 r1 r1 | r1 r1 r1 r1 | MOVRR r1, r2 | Register r1 ← Register r2 | None | 1 |
| | 1010 | 0111 | kkkk | kkkk | MOV A,#k | A ← k | None | 1 |
| Drensk | 110a | aaaa | aaaa | aaaa | JMP addr | PC ← addr PC[1316] unchange | None | 1 |
| Branch | 111a | aaaa | aaaa | aaaa | CALL addr | [Top of Stack] ← PC + 1 PC ← addr PC [1316] unchange | None | 1 |
| Bank | 1010 | 1110 | 0000 | 0kkk | BANK #k | R4(RAMBS0) ← k (0~6) | None | 1 |
| Page | 1010 | 1101 | 0000 | 000k | PAGE #k | R5(PAGES) ← k (0~1) | None | 1 |



20 Electrical Characteristics

20.1 Absolute Maximum Ratings

| Temperature under bias | 0°C | to | 70°C |
|------------------------|-------|----|-------|
| Storage temperature | -65°C | to | 150°C |
| Input voltage | -0.3V | to | +3.6V |
| Output voltage | -0.3V | to | +3.6V |

20.2 DC Electrical Characteristic

Ta=0°C ~ 70 °C, VDD=3.3V±5%, VSS=0V

| Symbol | Parameter | Condition | Min | Тур | Max | Unit |
|--------|--|--|---------|------|---------|------|
| Fxt | Crystal: VDD ~ 2.75V | One cycle with one clock | DC | - | 48.0 | MHz |
| IIL | Input Leakage Current for input pins | VIN = VDD, VSS | _ | I | ±2 | μA |
| VIH | Input High Voltage | Port A ~ Port F | 0.8xVDD | - | - | V |
| VIL | Input Low Voltage | Port A ~ Port F | VSS | I | 0.2xVSS | V |
| VIHT | Input High Threshold Voltage | /RST | 2.0 | l | _ | V |
| VILT | Input Low Threshold Voltage | /RST | _ | I | 0.8 | V |
| VIHX | Clock Input High Voltage | OSCI, OSCO | 2.5 | - | - | V |
| VILX | Clock Input Low Voltage | OSCI, OSCO | _ | - | 1.0 | V |
| VOH1 | Output High Voltage: PTA, PTC, PTD, PTE, PTF | IOH = -8.0 mA | 2.4 | _ | _ | V |
| VOH2 | Output High Voltage: PTB; RFIO | IOH = -8.0 mA | 2.4 | _ | _ | V |
| VOL1 | Output Low Voltage: PTA, PTC, PTD, PTE, PTF | IOL = 8.0 mA | _ | _ | 0.4 | V |
| VOL2 | Output Low Voltage: (1) PTB; RFIO | IOL = 8.0 mA | _ | - | 0.4 | V |
| IPH | Pull-high current | Pull-high active, input pin at VSS | _ | -6.5 | _ | μA |
| ISB | Power down current | All input and I/O pins at VDD, Output pin floating, WDT and all peripherals disabled. | _ | _ | _ | μΑ |
| ICC1 | Operating supply current (VDD = 3.3V) | /RESET = 'High', Fosc = 32kHz (RC type), Output pin floating, WDT and all peripherals disabled. | _ | - | _ | μΑ |
| ICC3 | Operating supply current (VDD = 3.3V) | /RESET= 'High', Fosc = 6MHz (Crystal type), Output pin floating, and all peripherals disabled. | _ | _ | _ | mA |



20.3 Voltage Detector Electrical Characteristic

Ta=25°C

| Symbol | Parameter | Condition | Min | Тур | Max | Unit |
|-----------|------------------------------------|---------------|------|---------------------------|-----|-------|
| Vdet | Detect voltage | _ | 1.8 | 2.0 | 2.2 | V |
| Vrel | Release voltage | _ | - | $\text{Vdet} \times 1.05$ | | V |
| lss | Current consumption | VDD = 3V | - | - | 0.8 | μA |
| Vop | Operating voltage | _ | 0.7* | - | 3.5 | V |
| ∆Vdet/∆Ta | Vdet Temperature characteristic | 0°C ≤Ta≤ 70°C | _ | _ | -2 | MV/°C |

* When the VDD voltage rises between Vop=0.7V and Vdet, the voltage detector output must be "Low".

20.4 AC Electrical Characteristic

20.4.1 MCU

Ta=0°C ~ 70 °C, VDD=3.3 V±5%, VSS=0V)

| Symbol | Parameter | Conditions | Min | Тур | Max | Unit |
|--------|--------------------------------------|-------------------------|--------------|-----|----------|----------|
| Dclk | Input CLK duty cycle | _ | 45 | 50 | 55 | % |
| Tins | Instruction cycle time (CLKS="0") | Crystal type RC type | 125 500 | _ | DC DC | ns ns |
| Ttcc | TCC input period | - | (Tins+20)/N* | - | - | ns |
| Tdrh | Device reset hold time | Ta = 25°C | 9 | 18 | 30 | ms |
| Trst | /RESET pulse width | Ta = 25°C | 2000 | - | - | ns |
| Twdt | Watchdog timer period | Ta = 25°C | 9 | 18 | 30 | ms |
| Tset | Input pin setup time | _ | - | 0 | - | ms |
| Thold | Input pin hold time | _ | _ | 20 | _ | ms |
| Tdelay | Output pin delay time | Cload=20pF | _ | 50 | - | ms |

* N= selected prescaler ratio.



20.4.2 BB

Ta=0°C ~ 70 °C, VDD=3.3 V \pm 5%, VSS=0V

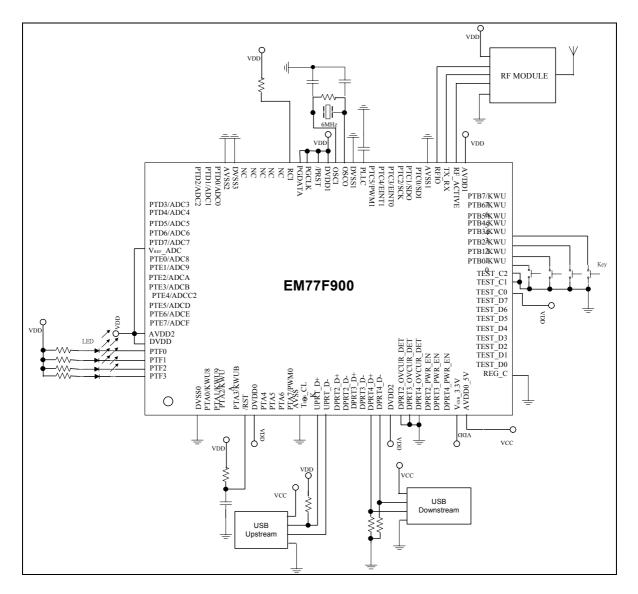
| Symbol | Parameter | Min | Max | Unit |
|--------|------------------------------------|----------|----------|------|
| 1/tOSC | Oscillator frequency | 0.1 | 24 | MHz |
| tRDPW | RD pulse width | 3*tOSC+∆ | - | ns |
| tCSRD | CS low to RD low | tOSC | - | ns |
| tADRD | Address valid for RD low | 0 | - | ns |
| tRDDV | RD low to Data valid | - | 3*tOSC+∆ | ns |
| tRHDT | Data float after RD. | - | tOSC | ns |
| tDHAR | Data hold after RD | 0 | - | ns |
| tRHDT | Time between consecutive RD pulses | 2*tOSC | - | ns |
| tRDAN | Address valid after RD low | 3*tOSC+∆ | _ | ns |

 Δ >0 will be determined according to cell library simulation.

The values above were determined according to behavioral simulations. They take into account only the BB digital state-machine. Thus, such values are for reference only.



21 Application Circuit





APPENDIX

A Package Type

| ET NO | Package Type | Pin Count | Package Size |
|-----------|--------------|-----------|--------------|
| EM77F900Q | QFP100 | 100 | 14X20MM |
| EM77F900Q | LQFP64 | 64 | 10X10MM |

B Package Information

